Ph. D. Thesis

Functional Analysis of Carotenoid Biosynthesis Genes in Sweetpotato *Ipomoea batatas*

February 2017

Division of Sciences for Biofunction Development

Research Institute for Bioresources and Biotechnology, Ishikawa Prefectural University

Muhammad Zubair Khan

ABSTRACT

Sweetpotato *Ipomoea batatas* is known as a hexaploid species. Carotenoids contents in the leaves and tubers of sweetpotato cultivars 'White Star' (WS) and W71 were analyzed chemically. These cultivars were found to contain several carotenoids unique to sweetpotato tubers such as β -carotene-5,6,5',8'-diepoxide and β -carotene-5,8-epoxide. Two kinds of carotene cyclase genes that encode lycopene β - and ϵ -cyclases were isolated from the WS and W71 leaves, by RT-PCR and subsequent RACE. Two and three lycopene β -cyclase gene sequences were, respectively, isolated from WS, named *IbLCYb1*, 2, and from W71, *IbLCYb3*, 4, 5. Meanwhile, only a single lycopene ϵ -cyclase gene sequence, designated *IbLCYe*, was isolated from both WS and W71. These genes were separately introduced into a lycopene-synthesizing *Escherichia coli* transformed with the *Pantoea ananatis crtE*, *crtB* and *crtI* genes, followed by HPLC analysis. β -carotene was detected in *E. coli* cells that carried *IbLCYb1*-4, indicating that the *IbLCYb1*-4 genes encode lycopene β -cyclase. Meanwhile, the introduction of *IbLCYe* into the lycopene-synthesizing *E. coli* led to efficient production of δ -carotene with a monocyclic ϵ -ring, providing evidence that the *IbLCYe* gene codes for lycopene ϵ -(mono) cyclase. Expression of the β - and ϵ -cyclase genes was analyzed as well.

Two kinds of carotene hydroxylase genes that encode non-heme di-iron carotene hydroxylase (BHY) and heme-containing cytochrome P450-type carotene hydroxylase (CYP97B) were isolated from the W71 and WS leaves, by RT-PCR and subsequent RACE, and found that each gene consists of single copy. These genes were respectively named IbBHY1, IbBHY2 IbCYP97B1 and IbCYP97B2. Whereas, two and four heme-containing cytochrome P450-type carotene hydroxylases (CYP97A) were isolated from W71 and WS, and named IbCYP97A1, 2 and *IbCYP97A3*, 4, 5, 6, respectively. When *IbBHY1* and *IbBHY2* were separately introduced into β-carotene-accumulating *E. coli* due to the presence of plasmid pACHP-Beta, and resultant transformed cell cultures were analyzed by HPLC, β -cryptoxanthin and zeaxanthin were detected. This result indicates that both *IbBHY1* and *IbBHY2* hydroxylated the β -ring of β -carotene to synthesize zeaxanthin via β -cryptoxanthin. Contrarily, introduction of IbCYP97A1-IbCYP97A6 IbCYP97B1 IbCYP97B2 and and genes into β-carotene-accumulating E. coli did not change the composition of the carotenoids, and β-carotene was detected when analyzed by HPLC. Similarly, introduction of IbCYPP97A1-IbCYP9A6 and IbCYP97B1 and IbCYP97B2 genes into α -carotene accumulating *E. coli* did not change the carotenoids composition. These results suggested that these IbCYP97A and IbCYP97B gene sequences were not able to function as carotene hydroxylases in E. coli.

Introduction of a bacterial ketolase gene *crtW* in cultivar W71 resulted in the accumulation of three novel carotenoids in transgenic W71, identified by high resolution ESI-MS and ¹H NMR data analyses.

KEY WORDS

Sweetpotato, W71, WS, Carotenoids accumulation, High performance liquid chromatography, RACE, PCR, *E. coli*, Transformation, Cloning, Gene isolation, Sequence Analysis, Phylogenetic analysis, Functional analysis, Carotenoids extraction, Agrobacterium, Carotenoids ketolase, *crtW*, Metabolic engineering, Plant Transformation, UV-vis, ESI-MS, ¹H-NMR, CD Spectral data, COSY and NOESY Experiments, Novel carotenoids.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

In the Name of the Almighty God the Beneficent and the Merciful. The first and the foremost praise to Him for all the graces he bestowed me, for all the energies He supplied me to accomplish all what I knew and what I didn't and for what I wished for. Praise and glory to Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) for the Holy lights of love, knowledge, mercy and the message of the eternal joy and spiritual peace He came to us. Salam and Peace be upon His beloved family and His beloved cousin Ali (SBUH), "the Gate of the Knowledge City" (PBUH), I pay my heartfelt gratitude to my spiritual master Syed Tanveer Hussain.

It makes me feel soulful thinking back the memories of those days when I came here to join the institute of Bioresources and Biotechnology. It could only become possible by the kind help of Professor Norihiko Misawa, my first mentor and the supervisor. He is the honorable professor who made my dream come true of working in a modern and fully equipped laboratory in Japan. I have immense gratitude for him for his ever kindness, help, advice and moral support in achieving this target. I am especially grateful to him for his magnificent support during my stay in achieving this task. I surprise how he could have been buffering seldom strange questions and responses from me. Now, when I know that I would be no longer here in his lab, I will really miss him in my future career life.

My deepest gratitude and appreciation go for Associate Prof. Miho Takemura for her ever kindness and help during this study. As a teacher she has been a role model for me from the beginning to the end in terms of my learning through consistent hard work, tolerance and handling of challenging experimental tasks. From her I have learnt multi-tasking. I will never forget her for her ever tolerance and kind response against repeatedly asked same questions. I think I will never find any teacher like her in my life again.

Special thanks to Prof. Takashi Maoka for his technical support and helps in my understanding of sweetpotato carotenoids chemical analysis. Without his expertise and support it could not have been possible to carry out the detailed analysis of carotenoids in wild and the transgenic sweetpotato.

My sincere appreciation goes to Associate Prof. Motoyasu Otani, for his professional support in my understanding of sweetpotato transformation. I am also thankful for his kind helps in providing me the sweetpotato cultivars W71 and WS.

I am grateful to Dr. Jun-ichiro Hattan for his nice and helpful company during my whole term. I am especially thankful to him for his introductory lab sessions during the start of this research work.

I would like to express my thanks to all the lab fellows during my stay for their wonderful company. Specially, I am grateful to Ms. Chisako Fuchimoto, for her technical supports. I can't forget to say my hearty thanks to Ms. Miyuki Murakami, Ms. Ayaka Atsumi, Ms. Megumi Hashida, and all lab members and fellows.

I acknowledge the MEXT, Japan who fully funded my research and stay in this lab.

I am much obliged for the helps and supports from the office staff of the Research Institute for Bioresources and Biotechnology and the university campus office. Special thanks to Oba san, Ishida san and Izumi san for their support in handling office related matters during my stay.

While summing up, I can't forget to pay the heartiest gratitude to my parents, brothers, and sisters for their priceless love and care during my stay in Japan.

Muhammad Zubair Khan February 13, 2017 Dedicated to my beloved life mate Maleeha and my cute little Angel Wardah Zubair

TABLE OF CONTENTS

BSTRACT	i
EY WORDS	ii
CKNOWLEDGEMENT	iii
EDICATION	v
ABLE OF CONTENTS	vi
IST OF FIGURES	.xiii
IST OF TABLES	. xv
IST OF ABBREVIATIONS	xvi

1	. INTRODUCTION	1
	1.1 Sweetpotato	1
	1.1.1 Economic Importance of Sweetpotato	1
	1.1.2 Genetic Origin and Diversity	2
	1.1.3 Nutritional Composition and Health benefits of Sweetpotato	4
	1.2 Carotenoids and their Distribution	7
	1.2.1 Role of Carotenoids in Plants	8
	1.2.2 Role of Carotenoids in Animals	8
	1.2.3 Carotenoids use in Disease Prevention	9
	1.2.4 Industrial Uses of Carotenoids	10
	1.2.5 Classification and Nomenclature of Carotenoids	11
	1.3 Biosynthesis of Carotenoids	11

	1.3.1 Biosynthesis of IPP and DMAPP	12
	1.3.2 Biosynthesis of Phytoene	13
	1.3.3 Biosynthesis of Lycopene	13
	1.3.4 Biosynthesis of Carotenes from Lycopene Cyclisation	15
	1.3.5 Biosynthesis of Xanthophylls	17
	1.3.6 Biosynthesis of Ketocarotenoids	19
	1.4. Isolation and Functional Identification of identification of Carotenoids Biosynthesis genes	
	1.5 Sweetpotato Carotenoids Biosynthesis Genes, Cloning and Genetic Engineering	21
	1.6 Metabolic Engineering of the Carotenoid Biosynthetic Pathway to Enhance Carotenoid Content in Higher Plants	23
	1.6.1 Metabolic Engineering of the Carotenoid Biosynthetic Pathway in Sweetpotato	25
	1.7 OBJECTIVES	27
2.	MATERIALS AND METHODS	28
	2.1 Plant Material	28
	2.1.1 Bacterial Strains	29
	2.2 Carotenoid Analysis from Leaves and Tubers of Sweetpotato Cultiva	ars .
	2.2.1 Carotenoids Extraction from Leaves and Tubers of Sweetpotato	29
	2.2.2 HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids Extracted from Leaves and Tubers	.29
	2.2.3 Identification and quantification of Carotenoids in Sweetpotato Lea and Tubers	
	2.3 Isolation and Analysis of Nucleic Acids	30

2.3.1 Isolation and Purification of RNA from Sweetpotato
2.3.2 Synthesis of the First-Strand Complementary DNA (cDNA)
2.3.3 Agarose Gel Electrophoresis
2.3.4 Extraction and Purification of DNA Fragments from Agarose Gels31
2.3.5 Isolation and Purification of Plasmid DNA
2.3.6 Restriction Digestion Reactions
2.3.7 DNA Sequencing
2.3.8 DNA Sequence Analysis
2.4 Amplification and Quantification of Nucleic Acids
2.4.1 Designing of primers
2.4.2 Polymerase Chain Reactions (PCR)
2.4.3 Rapid Amplification of cDNA Ends (RACE)
2.4.4 Quantitative Real-Time PCR
2.5 Cloning and Functional Identification of Carotenoids Genes
2.5.1 Ligation Reactions for RACE-PCR/PCR products with pGEMT Easy Vector, pBluescriptII K ^{$+$} Vector, pETDuet Vector and pRSFDuet Vectors .34
2.5.2 Preparation of Heat-Shock Competent <i>E. coli</i> Cells
2.5.3 Transformation of Competent DH5α <i>E.coli</i> Competent Cells and BL21 (DE3)
2.5.4 Culture Media for <i>E. coli</i>
2.5.5 Plasmids used for Heterologous Complementation Expression System in <i>E. coli</i> for Functional Identification of Isolated Carotenoids Biosynthesis Genes from Sweetpotato
2.6 Analysis of Carotenoids from Transformed <i>E. coli</i>

2.6.1 Extraction of Carotenoids
2.6.2 Chloroform Based Carotenoids Extractions
2.6.3 HPLC Analysis and Identification of Extracted Carotenoids
2.7 Maintenance of Desirable <i>E. coli</i> Clones by Cryopreservation
2.8 Transformation of Sweetpotato W71 Tubers with Bacterial Ketolase (<i>crtW</i>) Genes
2.8.1 Preparation of <i>crtW</i> Gene Construct for Expression in W71 Tuber37
2.8.2 Transformation of <i>Agrobacterium tumefaciens</i> Strain EHA101 Cells with <i>crtW</i> Gene Construct
2.8.3 <i>Agrobacterium tumefeciens</i> Mediated Transformation and Culturing of W71 Sweetpotato Tuber
2.9 Analysis of Carotenoids from Transgenic Sweetpotato
2.9.1 Extraction of Carotenoids
2.9.2 HPLC-PDA Analysis and Identification of Extracted Carotenoids39

3. RESULTS AND DISCUSSIONS

3.1 CHEMICAL ANALYSIS OF CAROTENOIDS FROM SWEETPOTATO39
3.1.1 HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids from the leaves and tubers of Sweetpotate
3.1.2 Proposed Biosynthetic Pathway of Carotenoids based on HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids from Sweetpotato
3.1.3 Conclusion
3.2. ISOLATION OF LYCOPENE CYCLASE GENES FROM SWEETPOTATO
3.2.1 Isolation of Lycopene β-cyclase (<i>IbLCYb</i>) Genes from WS and W71 Cultivars of sweetpotato44

3.2.2 Isolation of Lycopene ε-cyclase (<i>IbLCYe</i>) Genes from WS and W71 Cultivars of sweetpotato45
3.2.3 Sequence Analysis and Alignments of <i>IbLCYb</i> and <i>IbLCYe</i> Genes45
3.2.4 Phylogenetic Analysis of LCYb and LCYe Proteins from
Plants Species46
3.2.5 Conclusion46
3.3 FUNCTIONAL ANALYSIS OF ISOLATED <i>IbLCYb</i> AND <i>IbLCYe</i> CYCLASE GENES FROM SWEETPOTATO
3.3.1 HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids formed in the Lycopene-producing <i>E. coli</i> Transformed with the Sweetpotato <i>IbLCYb</i> and/or <i>IbLCYe</i> Genes
3.3.2 Expression Analysis of the Isolated <i>IbLCYb</i> and <i>IbLCYe</i> Genes from Sweetpotato Cultivars WS and W7151
3.3.3 Conclusion
3.4 ISOLATION OF β-CAROTENE HYDROXYLASE GENES FROM SWEETPOTATO
3.4.1 Isolation of Non-heme di-iron β-carotene Hydroxylase (<i>IbBHY</i>) Genes from WS and W71 Cultivars of Sweetpotato54
3.4.2 Sequence Analysis and Alignments of <i>IbBHY</i> Genes
3.4.3 Phylogenetic Analysis of BHY Proteins from Plants Species58
3.4.4 Conclusion
3.5 FUNCTIONAL ANALYSIS OF ISOLATED <i>IbBHY</i> GENES FROM WS AND W71 CULTIVARS OF SWEETPOTATO
3.5.1 HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids formed in the β-carotene-producing <i>E. coli</i> Transformed with the Sweetpotato <i>IbBHY</i> Genes
3.5.2 Conclusion

3.6 ISOLATION OF CYTOCHROME P450 HYDROXYLASE GENES FROM SWEETPOTATO
3.6.1 Isolation of Cytochrome P450 Hydroxylase Genes <i>IbCYP97A</i> and <i>IbCYP97B</i> from WS and W71 Cultivars of Sweetpotato62
3.6.2 Sequence Analysis and Alignment of <i>IbCYP97A</i> and <i>IbCYP97B</i> Genes 62
3.6.3 Phylogenetic Analysis of CYP97A and CYP97B Proteins from Plants Species
3.6.4 Conclusion
3.7 FUNCTIONAL ANALYSIS OF ISOLATED P450 HYDROXYLASE GENES IbCYP97A AND IbCYP97B FROM SWEETPOTATO67
3.7.1 HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids-formed in the β-carotene-producing <i>E. coli</i> Transformed with the Sweetpotato P450 Hydroxylase <i>IbCYP</i> 97A and <i>IbCYP</i> 97B Genes
3.7.2 HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids formed in the α-Carotene producing <i>E. coli</i> Transformed with the Sweetpotato P450 Hydroxylase <i>IbCYP97A</i> or <i>IbCYP97B</i> Genes
3.7.3 Conclusion71
3.8 ANALYSIS OF CAROTENOIDS FROM TRANSGENIC SWEETPOTATO CARRYING BACTERIAL β -CAROTENE KETOLASE (<i>CRTW</i>) GENES72
3.8.1 Sweetpotato W71 Tuber Transformation with the <i>Agrobacterium tumefaciens</i> EHA101 Cells carrying <i>crtW</i> Construct and Culturing72
3.8.2 HPLC-PDA Analysis and Identification of Novel Carotenoids in Transgenic Sweetpotato by UV-vis, ESI-MS, ¹ H-NMR, and CD Spectral Data
3.8.3 Identification and Confirmation of Novel Carotenoids from Transgenic W71 by UV-vis, ESI-MS, ¹ H-NMR, CD Spectral data and COSY and NOESY Experiments
3.8.4 Proposed biosynthetic pathway of the Novel Carotenoids Produced in the Tubers of the <i>crtW</i> Gene-expressed Sweetpotato

3.8.5 Conclusion	79
4. GENRAL CONCLUSION AND FUTURE PROSPECTS	79
5. APPENDIX	82
6. BIBLIOGRAPHY	84

LIST OF FIGURES

Figui	re Page
1.	Structures of some major dietary carotenoids7
2.	Cytoplasmic mevalonate pathway (MVA) and the plastid localized methylerythritol 4-phosphate (MEP) pathway for isoprenoid precursors IPP and DMAPP biosynthesis12
3.	Comparison of the lycopene synthesis pathway among plans, bacteria and cyanobacteria14
4.	Biosynthetic pathway of carotenes and xanthophylls in higher plants 16
5.	Carotenoid biosynthetic pathway in higher plants along with g the summarized illustration for the introduction and function of heterologous <i>crtW</i> and <i>crtZ</i> genes
6.	HPLC chromatograms of carotenoids extracted from the leaves (A) and tubers (B) of sweetpotato (<i>Ipomoeoa batatas</i>) cultivar WS40
7.	Proposed carotenoid biosynthetic pathway in the tubers of sweetpotato cultivars WS and W7143
8.	Alignment of IbLCYb with other plant LCYb proteins46
9.	Alignment of IbLCYe with other plant LCYe proteins47
10.	Phylogenetic tree of various lycopene β-cyclases (LCYb) and lycopene ε-cyclases (LCYe) proteins
11.	pACCRT-EIB plasmid comprising the gene cluster <i>crtE</i> , <i>crtB</i> and <i>crtI</i> from <i>Pantoea ananatis</i> for lycopene synthesis
12.	HPLC analysis of carotenoids formed in the lycopene-producing <i>E. coli</i> strain that had been transformed with the sweetpotato <i>IbLCYb</i> or <i>IbLCYe</i> genes
13.	HPLC analysis of carotenoides formed in the lycopene-producing <i>E. coli</i> strain that had been transformed with both the sweetpotato <i>lbLCYb</i> and <i>lbLCYe</i> genes

14.	Transcript levels of the <i>IbLCYb</i> gene and the <i>IbLCYe</i> gene in the leaves and tubers of sweetpotato cultivars W71 and WS
15.	Alignment of BHY genes amino acid sequences57
16.	Neighbor joining tree for phylogenetic relationship among β-carotene hydroxylases
17.	HPLC analyses of the carotenoids formed from β-carotene. <i>E. coli</i> that produce β-carotene accumulating bacteria
18.	pACHP-Beta comprise the gene cluster <i>crtE</i> , <i>crtB</i> , <i>crtI</i> and <i>crtY</i> from <i>Pantoea</i> <i>ananatis</i> along with the <i>Haematococcus pluvialis idi</i> gene for β-carotene synthesis
19.	Amino acid sequences alignment of CYP97A and CYP97B genes65
20.	Neighbor joining tree for phylogenetic relationship among CYP97A and CYP9B carotene hydroxylases
21.	HPLC analysis of carotenoids formed (shown as 21a and 21b) in the β- carotene producing <i>E. coli</i> strain that had been transformed with the sweetpotato <i>IbCYP97A</i> genes
22.	HPLC analysis of carotenoids formed in the α-carotene producing <i>E. coli</i> strain that had been transformed with the sweetpotato <i>IbCYP</i> 97A69
23.	HPLC analysis of carotenoids formed in the α- Carotene producing <i>E. coli</i> strain that had been transformed with the sweetpotato <i>lbCYP</i> 97 <i>B</i> genes
24.	β-amylase promoter construct of <i>crtW</i> gene showing arrangement of promoter, gene and terminator72
25.	Binary vector pZH2B with summarized arrangements of promoter, gene, and terminator
26.	Structures and key NOESY correlation of new carotenoids 1, 2, and 3 formed in transgenic sweetpotato cultivar W7178
27.	Proposed biosynthetic pathway of new carotenoids 1, 2, and 3 in the tubers of the <i>crtW</i> gene-expressed sweetpotato79

LIST OF TABLES

Tabl	e Page
1.	Spectroscopic data of the individual carotenoids analyzed from sweetpotato cultivars W7 and WS41
2.	Carotenoid content and composition in sweetpotato cultivars WS and W71. 41
3.	Primers used in cloning and isolation of <i>IbLCYb</i> and <i>IbLCYb</i> genes from W71 and WS cultivars of sweetpotato44
4.	Primers used in the real time PCR for expression analysis of lycopene cyclases in sweetpotato cultivars W71 and WS52
5.	Primers used in cloning of <i>IbBHY</i> genes in sweetpotato cultivars W71 and WS55
6.	Primers used for full length cDNA isolation of <i>IbCYP97A</i> and <i>IbCYP97B</i> genes in sweetpotato cultivars W71 and WS62
7.	Spectroscopic data for Echinenone a new carotenoid 1 (5,8-epoxide) in the tubers of the <i>crtW</i> gene-expressed sweetpotato75
8.	Spectroscopic data for new carotenoid 2 (Echinenone5 ['] 6 ['] -epoxide) in the tubers of the <i>crtW</i> gene-expressed sweetpotato76
9.	Spectroscopic data for new carotenoid 3 (3'-Hydroxyechinenone 5',6'-epoxide) in the tubers of the <i>crtW</i> gene-expressed sweetpotato77

ABBREVIATIONS

AO	aldehyde oxidase		
AVRDC	Asian Vegetable Research and Development Center		
BHY	carotene β -ring hydroxylase (non-heme di-iron carotene		
hydroxylase)			
BLAST	Basic Local Alignment Search Tool		
CAGR	compound annual growth rate		
CaMV	cauliflower mosaic virus		
CD	circular dichroism		
CDCl ₃	Trichloro (² H) methane (Deuterated chloroform)		
CIP	Centro Internacional de la Papa CIP (International Potato Center)		
Cm ^r	kanamycin resistance gene		
COSY	correlation spectroscopy		
CrtB	phytoene synthase (<i>Pantoea ananatis</i>)		
CrtE	GGPS equivalent in bacteria (<i>Pantoea ananatis</i>)		
Crtl	phytoene desaturase (Bacterial, <i>Pantoea ananatis</i>)		
CRTISO	carotenoid isomerase		
CrtM	dehydrosqualene synthase (Bacterial PSY)		
CrtO	β-carotene ketolase (<i>Synechocystis</i>)		
CrtW	β,β-carotenoid 4,4′-ketolase (<i>Brevundimonas</i> sp.)		
CrtX,	zeaxanthin glucosyltransferase (Pantoea ananatis)		
CrtY	lycopene β-cyclas (bacterial; <i>Pantoea ananatis</i>)		
CrtZ	β,β-carotenoid 3,3'-hydroxylase (<i>Brevundimonas</i> sp.)		
CYP97	heme-containing cytochrome P450-type carotene hydroxylase		
DMAPP	dimethyl allyl pyrophosphate		
DMSO	dimethyl sulfoxide		
DNase	deoxyribonucleas		
dNTP	deoxy ribonucleotide triphosphate		
DW	dry weight		
DXP	1-deoxy-D-xylulose-5-phosphate		
DXR	DXP reducto-isomerase		
DXS	DXP synthase		
EDTA	Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid		
ESI	electro-spray ionization		
FPP	farnesyl pyrophosphate		
FW	formula weight		

G3P	glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate		
GGPS	geranylgeranyl pyrophosphate synthase		
GPP	geranyl diphosphate		
¹ H NMR	proton nuclear magnetic resonance		
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus		
HPLC	high performance liquid chromatography		
HRMS	High Resolution Mass Spectrometry		
IDI/id i	isopentenyl diphosphate isomerase (<i>Paracoccus</i> sp.)		
IPP	isopentenyl diphosphate		
IPTG	Isopropyl β-D-1-thiogalactopyranoside		
IU	international unit (1.0 IU of β -carotene=0.6µg of β -carotene)		
Km ^r	kanamycin resistance gene		
LC/MS	Liquid Chromatography/Mass Spectrometry		
LCYb	lycopene β-cyclas		
LCYe	lycopene ε-cyclase		
LDL	low-density lipoprotein		
Mbp	millions of base pairs		
MEP	2C-methyl-D-erythritol 4-phosphate		
MVA	mevalonic acid		
NCED	9-cis-epoxycarotenoid dioxygenase		
NOESY	Nuclear Overhauser Effect Spectroscopy		
NPQ	non-photochemical quenching		
NSY	neoxanthin synthase		
PDA	photodiode array detector		
PDS	phytoene desaturase		
PSY	phytoene synthase		
PVACs	Pro-vitamin A carotenoids		
RACE	Rapid Amplification or cDNA (Complementary DNA) Ends		
RNase	ribonuclease		
SCF	sequence chromatogram files		
SQS	squalene synthase		
TAE	Tris-Acetate and EDTA (buffer)		
TE	Tris base (tris- amino methane) and EDTA (buffer)		
TOF	time-of-flight		
2YT	two-time yeast extract and tryptone media		
USDA	United States Department of Agriculture		
UV	ultra violet		
UV-vis	Ultraviolet-visible spectroscopy		

v/v	volume per volume
VDE	violaxanthin de-epoxidase
w/v	weight per volume
ZDS	ζ-carotene desaturase
ZEP	zeaxanthin epoxidase
Z-ISO	ζ-carotene-isomerase

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Sweetpotato

Sweetpotato [Ipomoea batatas (L.) Lam], which is also described as "sweet potato", belongs to the family Convolvulaceae and occupies the seventh position among the food crops of the world after wheat, rice, maize, potato, barley, and cassava (Ahn et al., 2010; Khan et al., 2016; Rodriguez-Bonilla, et al., 2014). The largest genus in family Convolvulaceae is Ipomoea consisting, 600-700 species among which only *Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam. is cultivated widely as a food crop around the world (Hirakawa et al., 2015; Austin and Huám, 1996). The genome of sweetpotato is structurally complex and has a size of 4.8-5.3 pg/2C nucleus (Ozias-Akins and Jarret, 1994). Due to the existence of polyploidy, sweetpotato is a hexaploid species (2n=6x=90) that has a basic chromosome number of 15, (Hirakawa et al., 2015) with a huge genome size of 2,200 to 3,000 Mbp (Yan et al., 2014). The genetic studies on this species are exhausting, since it is difficult to generate seeds and to evaluate the effects of polyploidy on the genome (Roullier et al., 2013; Arizio et al., 2014). Such a complex structure of its genome also manifests self and cross-incompatibility causing barrier for genetic studies on several important agronomical characters (Martin, 1965; Hirakawa et al., 2015). Its tubers exhibit various colors such as white, yellow, orange, and purple among different cultivars, and all species include β -carotene as well as other carotenoids, while orange-fleshed lines were shown to contain β -carotene as the predominant carotenoid (Purcell et al., 1968; Teow et al., 2007; Grace, et al., 2014; Holden et al., 1999; Burns et al., 2003). In Japan the high yielding orange-fleshed varieties include Benihayato and Kyushu No. 114, while, among purple-fleshed, varieties, Ayamurasaki is a high anthocyanin rich cultivar developed by the Kyushu National Agricultural Experiment Station (Yamakawa et al., 1997; Nedunchezhiyan et al., 2012).

1.1.1 Economic Importance of Sweetpotato

Sweetpotato is a major staple crop especially in many of the tropical countries (Lebot 2009), subtropical countries and has the potential to provide nutritional benefits to the people of both rural and urban regions (Woolfe, 1992; Fesco and

Boudion, 2002; Alam et al., 2016). It is cultivated in more than 100 countries (Mohan and Nair, 2012) with a world estimated production of 107 million metric tonnes, Asia (74.3%), Africa (21.2%), Americas (3.6%), and Oceania (0.8%). (FAO, 2017). Developing countries highly depend on root and tuber crops as a major source of food, nutrition or income (Scott et al., 2000). Therefore, it is important to critically reassess multipurpose and easily available root and tuber crops with wide ecological adaptability for their usefulness in human nutrition. Among such crops, sweetpotato is a unique one for having a high harvest index supplemented with drought tolerance, and a wide range of adaptability to diverse climatic conditions and farming systems (Diop, 1998; Jiang et al., 2004a). Moreover, the cultivation costs for sweetpotato are low because it requires very few inputs and labour. Such agronomic characteristics make it suitable especially for individuals threatened by migration or lethal diseases such as HIV/AIDS (Jayne et al., 2004; Mwanga et al., 2011). In Asia, approximately half of the sweetpotato total production is used for animal feed and the rest is used for human consumption. Whereas, in Africa, almost all of the production is used as human food (Ahn et al., 2010). Sweetpotato also possesses potential for bioenergy production as it can grow on marginal lands (Kim et al., 2014) and is an important material for industry as a crop for new energy resource (Mohan and Nair, 2012). Reports on the use of sweetpotato tops as a vegetable in many areas of the world (Villareal, et al., 1982; As-Saqui, 1982; Nwinyi, 1992) shows that they are acceptable as edible like other traditional leafy vegetables (Islam, 2016). As compared to other tuber crops, the per unit area production of energy by sweetpotato is desirably high but, it is ranked third after potato and cassawa production around the world (Nedunchezhiyan et al., 2012; Chagonda et al., 2014).

1.1.2 Genetic Origin and Diversity

Sweetpotato cultivation is widespread in tropical, sub-tropical and even in some of the developing countries situated in temperate zones with variable climates (Ahn et al., 2010). Based on the variability in flesh color, white-fleshed to cream-fleshed sweetpotato is widespread in the Pacific whereas in the United States yellow to orange-fleshed sweetpotato is predominantly grown (Mohan et al., 2012). The

main commercial contributors of sweetpotatoes are China, Indonesia, Vietnam, Japan, India, and Uganda (Senanayake et al., 2014). The largest grower is China with 76% of the total world sweetpotato production (Mohan et al., 2012). At CIP the sweetpotato germplasm collection comprises 7,777 accessions, that include 4,615 landraces (native varieties), 1,984 breeding lines (improved varieties), and 1,178 samples of wild sweetpotato. They originate from Asia, Africa, the Americas, and the Pacific Islands (CIP, 2012). The international Potato Centre (CIP) records has reported 6,500 varieties or cultivars of sweetpotato from year 1,895 to 2,000 that include accessions, "wild" varities and selected varities (Ellong et al., 2014; Huaccho and Hijmas, 2000).

Archaeological records show that sweetpotato, native to Americas is one of the oldest domesticated and clonally propagated crops in the Americas (Roullier et al., 2013). Sweetpotato genetic diversity explored by use of molecular markers provided evidence that Central America is the primary centre of diversity and most likely its centre of origin (Haung and Sun, 2000). Based on analysis of morphological characters of sweetpotato and the wild *Ipomoea* species, the centre of origin of *I. batatas* was supposed to be somewhere between the Yucatan Peninsula of Mexico and the mouth of the Orinoco River in Venezuela more than 10,000 years ago (O'-Brien, 1972; Zhang et al., 2004; Austin, 1987; Rodriguez-Bonilla, et al., 2014).

Sweetpotato was introduced to Western Europe from West Indies after the first voyage of Columbus in 1492. Then, it was transferred to Africa, India, South East Asia and the East Indies in the 16th century, by Portuguese explorers, while, direct transfer of the plant was done by Spanish trading galleons from Mexico to the Philippines (Srisuwan et al., 2006; Rossel et al., 2001). Some of the genetic and cytological studies on its genome indicate that the diploid *Ipomoea trifida* is its closest wild relative. (Roullier et al., 2013; Buteler et al., 1999; Srisuwan et al., 2006). Because both *Ipomoea trifida* and *Ipomoea batatas* are cross-compatible with each other (Shiotani and Kawase, 1989; Katayama et al., 2006). The complete mechanism of the polyploidization in sweetpotato is yet not fully discussed (Roullier et al., 2013). Studies based on the cytogenetic analyses of a

series of interspecific hybrids between sweetpotato and *Ipomoea trifida* proposed that sweetpotato is an autohexaploid derived from diploid *Ipomoea trifida* (Shiotani and Kawase, 1989). New Guinea is considered the most important secondary centre of diversity for sweetpotato particularly the highlands region where the total number of cultivars grown has been roughly estimated to be about 5,000 (Bourke, 2009; Roullier et al., 2013).

1.1.3 Nutritional Composition and Health benefits of Seetpotato

In comparison with other tuber crops sweetpotato comprises higher contents of carbohydrates, many minerals, and more protein estimates than other vegetables (Shih et al., 2007; Ji et al., 2015). It also contains much higher levels of provitamin A, vitamin C, and minerals than rice or wheat (Wang et al., 1997). 100 g of raw sweetpotato contains: 1.57 g protein; 20.12 g carbohydrates; 3.0 g total dietary fiber; 41.8 g total sugars, 30.0 mg calcium; 0.61 mg iron; 25 mg magnesium; 47.0 mg phosphorous; 337.0 mg potassium; 55.0 mg sodium; 0.3 mg zinc; 2.4 mg vitamin C; 0.5 mg niacin; 0.2 mg; vitamin B6; 14187 IU vitamin A; 0.2 mg vitamin E; 11 μ g vitamin B-9; and 8509 μ g β -carotene (USDA National Nutrient Database, 2016). Sweetpotato starch is easy to digest therefore, it is a valuable constituent in the preparation of excellent weaning meals (Antonio et al., 2011). It is a source of food supply to combat malnutrition in the developing nations, since the tuberous roots (tubers) are enriched with starch and dietary fiber, along with carotenoids, anthocyanin, ascorbic acid, potassium, calcium, iron, and other bioactive ingredients (Khan et al., 2016; Purcell and Wallter, 1968; Yoshinaga et al., 1999; Teow et al., 2007; Grace, et al., 2014). For people of South-east Asia and Africa, this crop is the main source of β -carotene (Khan et al., 2016; Liao et al., 2008). The tubers of the Japanese cultivar "Benimasari" were found to accumulate unique carotenoids such as β -carotene-5,8,5',8'-diepoxide (40.5% of the total carotenoids), β -carotene-5,8-epoxide (6.5%) and ipomoeaxanthin A (3.2%), in addition to β -carotene (10.5%) (Maoka et al., 2007). Sweetpotato may have many health positive effects since it contains high amounts of numerous phytochemicals in roots or leaves (Ji et al., 2015; Tsuda et al., 1998). Sweetpotato cultivars with color-fleshed tubers have been reported for their excellent bioactivities such as antimutagenic (Mazza et al., 2002; Garzon et al., 2009) free radical scavenging

(Tsoyi et al., 2008), hepatoprotactive, reduction of liver injury (Wang and Maza 2002; Pisha and Pezzuto, 1994), anticancer (Hagiwara et al., 2002; Kurata et al., 2007; Islam et al., 2006), anti-oxidative activities (Islam et al., 2006; Kano et al., 2005; Cho et al., 2003), antimicrobial activity, anti-hypertension, anti-inflammatory, anti-diabetic anticaries effect, ultraviolet protection (Islam et al., 2006), and Chemo-preventive activities (Tsuda et al., 2003; Kamei et al., 1995). Previous reports suggest that tubers of *Ipomoea batatas* may be useful for treating peptic ulcers (Panda and Sonkamble, 2012).

Starch composition is 50% on average of the total carbohydrates. The composition of sugars vary among varieties and even between the same cultivars depending upon the maturity stage. Sucrose is dominant with fructose and glucose but, sweetpotato shows a low glycemic index of 50 (Ellong et al., 2014; Joseph 2006) which makes it suitable for diabetic or overweight individuals (Ellong et al., 2014). Total carotenoids in sweetpotato range from trace to amounts above 9 mg/100 g (Hagenimana et al., 1998). Among minerals, potassium is predominantly present in sweetpotato (Laurie et al., 2012). The leaves of sweetpotato are rich in protein, vitamin B, iron, calcium, and zinc, and are resistant to diseases and pests as compared to numerous other vegetables (Yoshimoto, 2001; Islam, 2016; Pace, et al., 1985; AVRDC 1985; Woolfe, 1992). The carotenoids present in the sweetpotato leaves can scavenge free radical agents as singlet oxygen quencher (Foote, 1976; Hue et al., 2011; Hue et al., 2012; Islam, 2016).

In a recent analytical report by Islam (2016), total phenol, carotenoid, anthocyanin and flavonoids contents of the sweetpotato leaves ranged from 2.0 to 22.5 (g /100 g DW), 0.9 to 23.4 (β -carotene equivalents/100 g; BET/100 g), 2.2 to 24.5 (color value/ g DW) and 62.8 to 272.2 (catechin equivalents; μ g/g), respectively (Islam, 2016). Consumption of sweetpotato in Asia, range from its use as additional food of minute status to a very vital supplementary food to rice and/or other root and tuber crops (Sosinski et al., 2002). It is cooked or used to make cakes, chapatis, mandazia, bread, buns and cookies (Aguoru, et al., 2015). In United States and some other developed countries sweetpotato is strictly used as a luxury food. In Japan, it is used in novel plant products and/or nutraceuticals (Wanda, 1987). By using absorption spectroscopy Ishiguro et al., (2010) analyzed carotenoids in some eight cultivars of yellow-fleshed sweetpotato and

compared them with carotenoids in yellow-fleshed cultivars. By HPLC analyses they revealed some 17 different carotenoids from yellow and orange fleshed-sweetpotato. In yellow fleshed-sweetpotato the major carotenoids included β -carotene, 5,8; 5',8'-diepoxide (32%-51%) and β -cryptoxanthin 5,8-epxide (11%-30%), whereas, β -carotene with amounts ranging from 80%-92% were dominant in in orange fleshed cultivars.

(Kammona et al., 2014) analysed and compared the carotenoid composition in some Malaysian orange, yellow, purple and white sweetpotato flesh tubers. They reported the highest total carotenoid content from orange sweet potato followed by yellow, purple and white sweetpotato. Among the individual carotenoids analyzed, β -carotene existed in all types ranging from 91.95±2.05 µg/g DW in white sweetpotato to 376.03±11.05 µg/g DW in orange sweet potato. Traces of zeaxanthin were reported with values 5.44±3.23 µg/g DW and 20.47±2.03 µg/g DW in yellow and white sweetpotato, respectively. Lutein was available only in orange sweetpotato at trace amount of 0.91±1.03 µg/g DW. Purple sweetpotato contained only β -carotene (113.86±14.17 µg/g DW) with absence of other carotenoids

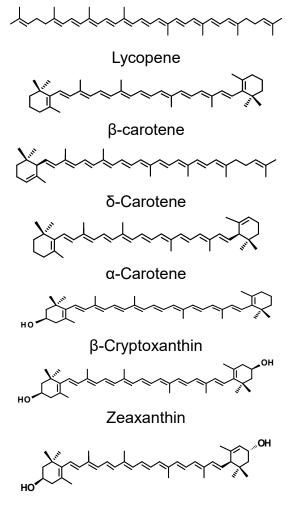
Islam et al., (2016) performed HPLC analyzes of *trans*- and *cis*- β -carotene from raw and boiled sweetpotato which included three orange-fleshed, three yellowish-cream-fleshed and one white-fleshed varieties of sweetpotato. The deep-orange-fleshed variety Kamalasundari (BARI SP-2) showed the highest amounts of β -carotene among all the varieties followed by yellow varieties. On the other hand, from one of the two white-fleshed varieties, only trace amounts of β -carotene were obtained with no amounts at all from the other one. Their results proposed that the orange-fleshed varieties of sweetpotato contain the highest amounts of β -carotene in raw as compared to those which were boiled.

The development of an efficient and reproducible transformation system is needed for genetic manipulation of sweet potato to either improve the crop or establish it as a novel 'transgenic plant bioreactor' (Song et al., 2004).

Despite of huge economic value sweetpotato has not received due importance as compared with common staple crops such as wheat, maize and rice. World increasing hidden hunger especially in developing countries needs new foods and nutrition sources on sustainable bases. In this regard, sweetpotato not only offers immense nutritional, medicinal and industrial, potential but is also a new horizon in modern industrial biotechnological uses.

1.2 Carotenoids and their Distribution

Carotenoids, the visible colors of life are the 40-carbon isoprenoids synthesized naturally by fungi, bacteria, algae, cyanobacteria (Walter and Strack, 2011; Okada *et al.*, 2008; Misawa, 2010), and conspicuously by green plants including, bryophytes (Takemura et al., 2014) and higher plants (Sugawara et al., 2009; Misawa, 2010; Fraser and Bramley, 2004). Being intracellular, carotenoids are commonly located in the membranes of chloroplasts, mitochondria or endoplasmic reticulum (Margalith, 1999). Approximately 750 carotenoids have been reported so far (Farré, et al., 2013; Britton et al., 2004).



lutein

Figure 1. Structures of some major dietary carotenoids.

1.2.1 Role of Carotenoids in Plants

Carotenoids have received increasing attraction during last decades due to their unique physiological role in plants light absorbance process during photosynthesis and protecting photosynthetic apparatus from photo-oxidization by quenching the chlorophyll triplets and singlet oxygen (Yuan et al., 2015; Giuliano, 2014; Arizio et al., 2014; Niyogi, 1999; Niyogi, 2000; Joseph Hirshberg, 2001). Carotenoids are the agents which aid colors and fragrance to the flowers and fruits attractive to animals consequently aiding to pollination and seed dispersal (Yamamizo et al., 2010; Tanaka et al., 2008; Howit and Pogson, 2006). Carotenoids also act as precursors for isoprenoid volatiles and signaling biomolecules such as abscisic acid and strigolactones which regulate plant development and function as plant protectants against environmental stress (Nisar et al., 2015; Walter and Strack, 2011; Cazzonelli, 2011).

1.2.2 Role of Carotenoids in Animals

Animals, with very few exceptions (Moran and Jarvik, 2010; Tonhosolo et al., 2009) are unable to synthesize them (Ruiz-Sola and Rodríguez Concepcióna 2012; Cazzonelli, 2011; however, carotenoids are accumulated by crustaceans, crabs, fish, crayfish, prawns and mammals and in insects such as butterflies. The animal and human diet must include carotenoids as essential nutrients (Misawa, 2010). In marine animals, astaxanthin (3,3'-dihydroxy- β , β -carotene-4,4'-dione) has been reported as the most commonly stored carotenoid pigment (Misawa et al., 1995). It is responsible for the red/pink coloration of crustaceans (Matsuno, 1989; Renstorm et al., 1981), and the flesh of salmonoids (Fraser et al., 1997). Astaxanthin has received much attraction for its likely role in preventing cardiovascular diseases and aging caused by UV-light in human body (Misawa, 2011).

Both α -carotene and β -carotene have provitamin A activity and are converted to retinol in the human body (Zeb and Mehmood, 2004; Jaswir et al., 2011; Thane

and Reddy, 1997; Park et al., 2009; Carillo-Lopez et al., 2010). Carotenes such as the lycopene and β -carotene play a potential role in human nutrition and act as a protectants against diseases such as lycopene protects against cardiovascular (Böhm, 2012), aging related diseases, macular degradation of eye (Gupta et al., 2003; Chichili et al., 2006), certain types of cancers including gastrointestinal, cervix, breast and prostate cancer (Peto et al., 1981; Fiedor and Burda, 2014; Fraser and Bramley, 2004; Stahl et al.,1998; Woodall et al., 1997; Erdman et al., 2009; Jaswir et al., 2011; Giovannucci et al., 2002). Beneficial effects of dietary carotenes α -carotene β -carotene on human health related to enhancement of immune system and minimizing the risk of cancer are due to their anti-oxidant potential (Fiedor and Burda, 2014; Das et al., 2007). β -carotene, α -carotene and β -cryptoxanthin are Pro-vitamin A carotenoids (PVACs) and hence they are the main precursors of vitamin A (VA) in the human body (Arscott and Tanumihardjo, 2010).

1.2.3 Carotenoids use in Disease Prevention

Carotenoids especially astaxanthin, have been reported to enhance both the non-specific and specific immune system and protect cell membranes and cellular DNA from mutation (Misawa, 2010; Bendich A. 1989). Intake off fruits and vegetables rich in carotenoids mainly lycopene, α -carotene β -carotene, β -cryptoxanthin, zeaxanthin and lutein lowers the risk of morbidity and mortality by cardiovascular diseases and atherosclerosis (Fiedor and Burda, 2014). Epidemiological studies have reported that lycopene can lower the risk of prostate cancer (Nakazawa, et al., 2009) and in its ability to quench singlet oxygen, it is two to tenfold stronger than β -carotene and α -tocopherol, respectively (Rao, Guns and Rao, 2003). Clinical studies have reported that the lycopene enriched foods are protective against oxidative DNA damage in leukocytes in vitro (Pool-Zobel et al., 1997) and prostate tissue in vivo (Bowen et al., 2002). β-carotene is useful in reducing the risk ischemic heart disease and myocardial infarction risk (Hennekens et al., 1996). In the macular region of human eye including eye lense, two xanthophylls, lutein and zeaxanthin exist in high concentrations and are regarded very important carotenoids for eye health. Reports suggest that these two carotenoids protect eye from high energy UV light and are excellent reactive

oxygen species scavengers (Edge et al., 1997). The role of lutein and zeaxanthin as macular pigments and their function in eye health has been reported in previous studies (Abdel-Aal et al., 2013). It has been anticipated that phytoene and phytofluene which are colorless precursors of other carotenoids, possess light absorption in UV-A and UV-B range, protect skin by their photo-protective characteristics (Stahl and Sies, 2012; Engelmann et al., 2011). Astaxanthin, is also known as the super anti-oxidant. Since it contains particular molecular configuration, making it extremely powerful antioxidant consequently protecting cells against oxidation by quenching singlet oxygen and dissipating the energy as heat. It has the strong potential for scavenging free radicals and effectively breaks peroxide chain reactions (Kurashige et al., 1990; Jorgensen, 1993). Studies have showed that the LDL high cholesterol levels in mice decreased when supplemented with astaxanthin. Neither beta-carotene nor canthaxanthin produced the same effect. Astaxanthin or other carotenoids can decrease the oxidation of the lipid-carriers and thereby reduce the risk of atherosclerosis (Murillo, 1992). It also has positive effects in case of antitumor activity (Jyonouchi et al., 2000).

1.2.4 Industrial Uses of Carotenoids

All carotenoids show antioxidants activities appearing in a variety of colors in red, yellow and orange. They are used as natural pigments in food, food supplements and as nutraceuticals. Moreover, they are used in pharmaceutical and cosmetic industry and various biotechnological purposes (Martin et al., 2008; Misawa, 2010; Kirti et al., 2014). In a previous report the global market for carotenoid was \$766 million in 2007. The expected projection for the year 2015 was \$919 million with a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of 2.3%. In 2007, β -carotene alone shared the market value at \$247 million; this segment was predicted to be worth \$285 million by 2015 with CAGR of 1.8% (FOD025C, 2008; Kirti et al., 2014). In horticultural crops they appear as a trait of attractiveness adding value to the marketing potential of fruits and vegetables (Azadi et al., 2010; Clotault et al., 2008). Green algae *Haematococcus pluvialis* which is the natural source of astaxanthin has been reported for huge amounts ranging from 10,000-40,000 ppm (mg/kg) astaxanthin in addition to other important carotenoids such as

beta-carotene, lutein and canthaxanthin (Fraser et al., 1997; Turujman, 1997). Industrially, astaxanthin has been utilized as a feed supplement for cultured fish and shellfish (Fujita et al., 1983; Matsuno, 1991). Other diverse biological functions of astaxanthin include an involvement in cancer prevention (Tanaka et al., 1994), enhancer of immune responses (Jyonouchi et al., 1993), and a free radical quencher (Miki et al., 1994 Fraser et al., 1997). It is evident, therefore, that astaxanthin is a molecule with potential both to the pharmaceutical and food industries (Fraser et al., 1997).

1.2.5 Classification and Nomenclature of Carotenoids

A systemic nomenclature for carotenoids has been reported (Fraser and Bramely, 2004) however, carotenids are broadly classified into two major groups, carotenes and xanthophylls. (Botella-pavía and Rodríguez Concepción, 2006; Mezzomo and Ferreira. 2016). Carotenes. the hydrocarbon carotenoids include α -carotene, β -carotene, and lycopene whereas, xanthophylls which are oxygenated hydrocarbon derivatives having at least one oxygen as keto, hydroxyl, methoxy, epoxy, or carboxylic acid groups, include β -cryptoxanthin, lutein, and zeaxanthin, astaxanthin, fucoxanthin, violaxanthin and neoxanthin (Basu et al., 2001 ;Jaswir et al., 2011; de Quiros and Costa, 2006). With 40 number of carbon atoms in a single molecule, the number of hydrogen atoms varies with no other elements. Tail to tail linkage of two C-20 geranylgeranyl diphosphate molecules leads to parental C-40 carbon skeleton and all of the individual variations are derived from it. Hydrocarbon ring either on one end or on the both ends is observed. Carotenes being hydrocarbons lack oxygen. Cyclisation at one or both ends of the parental structure results into seven end groups that include β , ϵ , Ψ , κ , Φ , χ , and γ . Change in the hydrogenation level and the addition of oxygen containing functional groups also modify the basic parental structure (Kirti et al., 2014). Carotenes are abundantly found in photosystem reaction centers, while xanthophylls mostly enriched in the light harvesting complexes (Ruiz-Sola and Rodríguez Concepción, 2012; Niyogi et al., 1997).

1.3 Biosynthesis of Carotenoids

11

In higher plants the genes which encode the enzymes that catalyze carotenoids biosynthesis for nearly every step of carotenoids biosynthetic pathway have been identified, sequenced and characterized (Cunningham, 2002).

1.3.1 Biosynthesis of IPP and DMAPP

Two pathways: the cytoplasmic mevalonate pathway (MVA) from metazoa and fungi and the plastid localized methylerythritol 4-phosphate (MEP) pathway for IPP production in plants and eubacteria have been reported (Eisenreich et al., 2004; Rodríguez Concepción and Boronat, 2002; Moise et al., 2014)

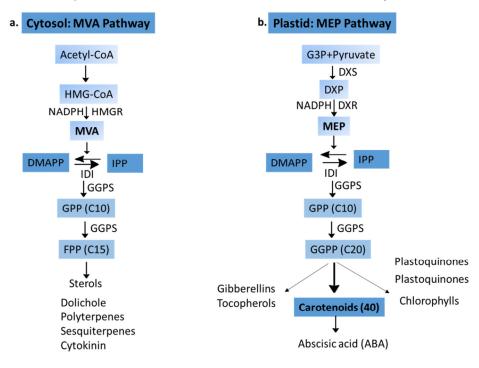


Figure 2. Cytoplasmic mevalonate pathway **a**, mevalonic acid pathway (MVA) and **b**, the plastid localized methylerythritol 4-phosphate (MEP) pathway for isoprenoid precursors IPP and **DMAPP** biosynthesis. **HMG-CoA**, 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A; **DXP**, 1-deoxy-D-xylulose-5-phosphate; **MVA**, mevalonic acid; **G3P**, glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate; **DMAPP**, dimethylallyl pyrophosphate; **IPP**, isopentenyl diphosphate; **IDI**, Isopentenyl diphosphate isomerase; **GPP**, geranyl diphosphate **FPP**, farnesyl pyrophosphate; **GGPS**, eranylgeranyl pyrophosphate synthase.

Since carotenoids are basically isoprenoids all are derived from the basic C-5 isoprene units, isopentenyl Carotenoid biosynthesis in plants uses initial molecules of IPP and DMAPP. Both IPP and DMAPP are derived from either, mevalonic acid

pathway (MEV) which evolved in archaea, existing in cytosol or the methylerythritol 4-phosphate (MEP) pathway in plastids (Moise et al., 2014; Lichtenthaler, 1999; Phillips et al., 2008; Cazzonelli, 2011; Eisenreich et al., 2004).

Pyruvate and glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P) are the initial substrates used in the MEP pathway to from deoxy-D-xylulose 5-phospahte (DXP) which is then catalyzed by DXP synthase (DXS) leading to the formation of MEP via reductive action of DXP reductoisomerase (DXR) on DXP and its intramolecular rearrangement (Carretero-paulet et al., 2006; Ghirardo et al., 2014). Depending on the availability, carotenoids are derived from two isoprene isomers, isopentenyl diphosphate (idi) and its allylic isomer dimethylallyl diphosphate (DMAPP).

After a number of subsequent reactions, IPP and DMAPP are formed .lsopentenyl diphosphate isomerase (idi) has the ability to reversibly interconvert IPP and DMAPP (Lichtenthaler, 1999). Agranoff et al., (1960) discovered IDI gene (Moise et al., 2014) and then it was cloned by Hahn et al., (1999). A series of condensation reactions leads to the formation of geranylgeranyl diphosphate (GGPP), the carotenoids biosynthesis precursor catalysed by geranylgeranyl diphosphate synthase, GGPS (Cazzonelli, 2011). GGPS was first identified in carotenoid biosynthesizing bacteria *Pantoea agglomerans* (Math et al., 1992) and then in plants (Kuntz et al., 1992; Moise et al., 2014).

1.3.2 Biosynthesis of Phytoene

Phytoene (a 15-cis isomer) which is the C40 isoprenoid is formed by head-to-head condensation of the two molecules of GGPP catalyzed by enzyme phytoene synthase (PSY) which was firstly isolated and cloned from plants (Dogbo et al., 1988; Armstrong et al., 1990) and from bacteria (Misawa et al., 1990; Armstrong et al., 1990). Formation of phytoene is the first devoted and rate limiting step in the carotenoid biosynthesis pathway in plants. (Moise et al., 2014; Welsch et al., 2008; Welsch et al., 2010).There are several paralogues of PSY in some plant species and are regulated differentially and show various tissue and intracellular patterns of expression (Shumskaya et al., 2012). Additionally, PSY expression is upregulated (Kachanovsky et al., 2012; Moise et al., 2014).Much about the activity of PSY can be deduced based on its similarity to crtM (dehydrosqualene synthase and squalene synthase (SQase). crtM is a bacterial type PSY that catalysis

formation of 15-cis-dehydrosqualene (C30 carotenoid). But PSY shows preference for catalyzing the biosynthesis of C40 carotenoids (Umeno et al., 2002).

1.3.3 Biosynthesis of Lycopene

In plants, with the introduction of four double bonds by the activity of two enzymes; phytoene desaturase (PDS) and ζ -carotene desaturase (ZDS), phytoene is first converted to tetra-cis lycopene. Carotenoid isomerase (CRTISO) then isomerizes cis bonds at 7, 9 and 7',9'position of tetra-cis lycopene to all -trans –lycopene named as Ψ , Ψ -carotene (Park et al., 2002; Isaacson et al., 2002; Nisar et al., 2015).

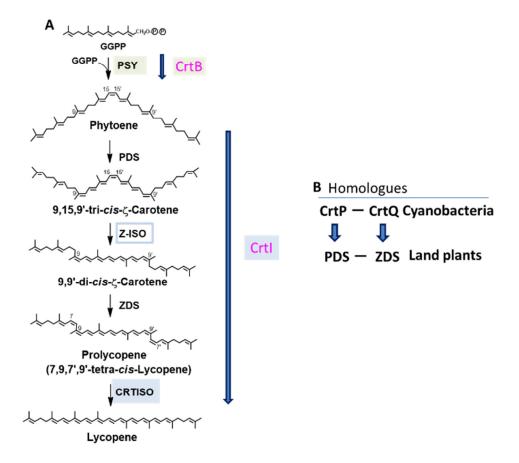


Figure 3. Comparison of the lycopene synthesis pathway among plans, bacteria and cyanobacteria. **A**, lycopene synthesis in plants, and the CrtI based phytoene synthesis pathway from carotenoid biosynthesizing bacteria compared with **B**, cyanobacteria. **GGPP**, geranylgeranyl pyrophosphate synthase (plants); **PSY**, phytoene synthase (plants); **CrtB**, phytoene synthase (bacterial); **PDS**, phytoene desaturase (plants); **CrtI**, phytoene desaturase (bacterial) **Z-ISO**, ζ -carotene-isomerase (plants); **ZDS**, ζ -carotene desaturase(plants); **CrtQ**, ζ -carotene desaturase (cyanobacterial); **CrtQ**, ζ -carotene desaturase (cyanobacterial).

Bacterial lycopene biosynthesis however, is catalyzed by bacterial type phytoene desaturase (Crtl) which was identified from Rhodobacter capsulatus. (Giuliano et al., 1986; Armstrong et al., 1989; Moise et al., 2014). In contrast, lycopene biosynthesis in plants, cyanobacteria, and green algae requires four enzymes with sequence of desaturation and isomerization reactions commonly proceeds in the order PDS \rightarrow Z-ISO \rightarrow ZDS \rightarrow CRTISO. It was found that fungal CrI is similar to that of bacterial one (Fraser et al., 1992; Bartley et al., 1990; Schaub et al., 2012; Moise et al., 2014). PDS was first identified in cyanobacteria (Chamovitz et al., 1990) followed by cloning of related cDNA from soybean, pepper, tomato and maize (Bartely et al., 1991). ZDS was first functionally identified by heterologous expression of a candidate PDS in *E. coli* strains that were specific to accumulate ζ -carotene (Linden et al., 1994). The gene for Z-ISO was initially identified by mutant screening of maize followed by functional complementation assys in E. coli (Chen et al., 2010). By using biochemical complementation supplemented with screening of carotenoids deficit strains and map based cloning, CRTISO gene was identified independently from cyanobacteria, tomato and Arabidopsis thaliana (Isaacson et al., 2002; Moise et al., 2013).

1.3.4 Biosynthesis of Carotenes from Lycopene Cyclisation

In plants the crucial stage begins when the cyclases: lycopene β -cyclase (LCYb) and lycopene epsilon cyclase (LCYe) attack on all-trans-lycopene and initiate cyclisation reactions that result into the formation of cyclic end group carotenoids with the addition of either β -ring and/or ϵ -ring. This leads to the formation of two branches in the carotenoid biosynthesis pathway in higher plants (Harjes et al., 2008; Cunningham et al., 1996; Takemura et al., 2014; Cazzonelli *2011;* Nisar et al., 2015) Since lycopene cyclisation is accelerated by different cyclase families so, the rise in the activity of β contrasted with ϵ - lycopene cyclases can turn lycopene towards synthesis of provitamin A carotenoids with enhanced nutritional value (Harjes et al., 2008) CRTY is a representative β - Cyclase from most of the proteobacteria but absent in cyanobacetria. However, cyanobacteria and green plants have a related LCY. On these bases, LCY enzymes can be classified into three sub-types based on the production of ionone ring So, there exist cyclase

(LCY) enzymes which catalyse the formation of β -ionone ring for example LCYB, or ε - ionone ring for example LCYe, and the bifunctional lycopene cyclases that generate carotenoids with either β or ϵ - ionone ring i.e., LCYB/LCYE (Cunningham et al., 1994; Moise et al., 2014) It was Rhodobacter sphaeroids a photosynthetic bacteria in which the first Bacterial type CRTY was identified by sequencing the carotenogenic gene cluster (Coomber et al., 1990). Plant type LCYB was first identified by utilizing map-based cloning and introgression lines (Ronen et al., 1999; Moise et al., 2014). Lycopene β -cyclase (LCYb) is singly capable to introduce two β -rings at both ends of lycopene changing it to β -carotene which belongs to β , β branch of carotenoids and named β - β -carotene. On the other hand, the combined catalytic action of lycopene β -cyclase (LCYb) and lycopene epsilon cyclase (LCYe) introduces one β and one ϵ -ring into lycopene consequently changing it to α -carotene [(6'R)- β , ϵ -carotene] which belongs to β - branch of carotenoids. However, LCYe alone typically adds one ε -ring to the lycopene to make monocyclic δ -carotene [(6'R)- ϵ , Ψ -carotene] which is converted to α -carotene by LCYb.

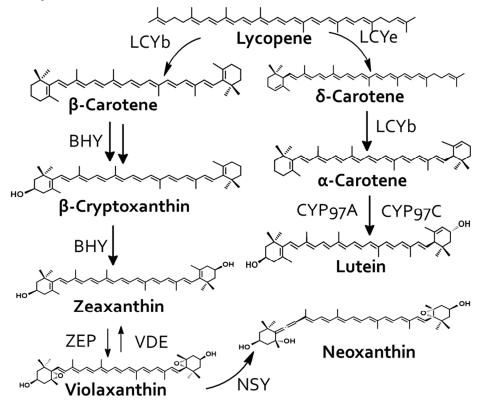


Figure 4. Biosynthetic pathway of carotenes and xanthophylls in higher plants.

Subsequent isomerization, hydroxylation or epoxidation of α -carotene and β -carotene modifies them to various structures (Yamamizo et al., 2010) thus, β -carotene which is one of the major carotenoids found in leaves of higher plants is changed to zeaxanthin, anthraxanthin, violaxanthin and neoxanthin (Takemura et al., 2014).

In most of the plants and algae, carotenoids with two ε - rings are commonly not found (Goodwin, 1980) however, in lettuce *LCYe* has been reported for generating bicyclic ε - ε -carotene along with its hydroxylated derivative lactucaxanthin by cyclsing both Ψ -ends of lycopene (Phillip and Young, 1995; Takemura et al., 2014; Cunnigham and Gantt, 2001). Various specific domains and residues have been identified which determine whetehr *LCYe* introduces one or two ε - ionone ring (Cunnigham and Gantt, 2001)

High level of structural similarity (30%) between the amino acid sequences of LCYb and LCYe exists (Hirschberg, 2001) suggests that both LCYb and LCYe share a common ancestor for their origin through gene duplication (Takemura et al., 2014). In tomato, two LCYb genes which separately exist in chloroplast and chromoplast have been reported that have 53% of identical amino acid sequences (Hirshberg, 2001; Bouvier et al., 1994). In case of Arabidopsis, only one LCYb gene was reported (Cunnigham et al., 1996; Ronen et al., 2000, Alquezar et al., 2009). Contrarily, only one copy of *LCY*e gene found in all higher plants by now. Highly regulated processes such as the control of gene expression levels are the factors determining the concentration and composition of carotenoids inside plant tissues (Ronen et al., 1999; Takemura et al., 2014). The allelic variation in the genes controlling carotenoids biosynthesis pathway is the important factor that determines the accumulation of carotenoids in a plant (Clotault et al., 2010; Arizio et al., 2014). The amino acid sequences of all LCY β -type enzymes have a conserved motif called FLEET motif which is essential for establishing activity (Cunnigham et al., 1996; Moise et al., 2014).

1.3.5 Biosynthesis of Xanthophylls

The hydroxylation of α -carotene and β -carotene leads to the formation of the xanthophylls such as lutein and zeaxanthin which are the main carotenoid

pigments in the photosynthetic apparatus of plants. Both zeaxanthin and lutein are synthesized by hydroxylation at the 3 and 3' carbon atom of β , β -carotene or β_{ϵ} -carotene by different hydroxylases which are specific to β or ϵ -rings for their hydroxylation activity (Deli et al., 2001). Hence, β -xanthophylls such as β -cryptoxanthin and ϵ -xanthophylls such as lutein are catalysed by two different classes of carotene hydroxylases. Among these one is a heme-containing cytochrome P450 i.e., CYP97 and the other is non-heme, di-iron BHY (Quinlan et al., 2012). Spesific memebers of β -ionone ring hydroxylase family have been realized as a critical target in breeding plants with a high provitamin A carotenoid quantity (Vallabhaneni et al., 2009). Carotene hydroxylases were firstly identified from carotenoid biosynthetic clusters in Erwinia urdoyora/herbicola i.e., Pantoea species (Perry et al., 1986). Followed by their identification in plants (Sun et al., 1996). Among bacterial and plant carotene hydroxylases there exists a sequence homology based on 40 % identity and 60% conserved substitutions. Marine bacteria, in contrast to higher plants and cyanobacteria have another family of carotenoid hydroxylases which catalyze the hydroxylation of β -ionone ring at C-2 position (Nishida et al., 2005; Moise et al., 2005).

Hydroxylation of the two β -ionone rings in β -carotene gives zeaxanthin, whereas hydroxylation of the one β -ring and one ε -ring in α -carotene leads to lutein formation. β -rings in the carotenes is potentially hydroxylated by either the P450-type CYP97A or di-iron BHY enzymes, while ε -ring of α -carotene is hydroxylated by CYP97C, which is an another P450 carotene- hydroxylase. From genetic evidences, it can be in-sighted that the enzyme which catalyzes the hydroxylation of ε -ionone ring in *Arabidopsis* was linked with *lut1* locus. This finding directed to the identification of the gene coding for ε -ring hydroxylase. Such a novel ε -ring hydroxylase was found to be a cytochrome P450 enzyme member of the CYP97C family (Tian et al., 2004; Moise et al., 2014).

CYP97C hydroxlases preferentialy the ε -ring however, in vivo studies showed that it can also show activity to catalyse β -ring hydroxylation (Fiore et al., 2006). Another P450hydroxylase from CYP97A family have been reported for activity pertaining to the hydroxylation of β -rings (Kim and DellaPenna,, 2006). CYP97B carotene hydroxylase is also present in higher plants however, their biosynthetic role is not clear (Kim et al., 2009a; Yang et al., 2014). CYP97A has been found to

18

preferably catalyse hydroxylation of β -rings (Moise et al., 2014). Studies show that CYP97C together with the CYP97A β -hydroxylases synthesize lutein by preferentially hydroxylating the ϵ -ring of substrates of whose β -ring have already been hydroxylated (Quinlan et al., 2007; Kim and DellaPenna,, 2006). It has also been identified that different carotenoid hydroxylases function in coordination to synthesize xanthphylls (Quinlan et al., 2012; Takemura et al., 2014; Moise et al., 2014)

Zeaxanthin is easily converted to violaxanthin, via antheraxanthin, by introduction of a 5,6-epoxy group to the 3-hydroxy β -rings, catalyzed by a zeaxanthin epoxidase (ZEP).

On the contrary, in leaves growing under high light intensity, violaxanthin de-epoxidase (VDE) catalyzes the de-epoxidation reaction in two steps, leading to the transformation of violaxanthin into zeaxanthin. However, when light conditions return to normal values, zeaxanthin is transformed into violaxanthin. This reversible inter-conversion is known as the xanthophyll cycle and is of key importance for NPQ (non-photochemical quenching) and for plant adaptation to changes in environmental conditions (Gómez-García. Ochoa-Alejo, 2013). In the last step of carotenoid biosynthesis, by the action of a neoxanthin synthase (NSY), violaxanthin is converted into neoxanthin (Botella-pavía and Rodríguez Concepción, 2006). Violaxanthin can also be converted into xanthoxin and subsequently into abscisic acid by reaction catalyzed by 9-cis-epoxycarotenoid dioxygenase (NCED) and an aldehyde oxidase (AO).

It has been proposed that neoxanthin can also be converted into xanthoxin by the NCED (Seo and Koshiba, 2002).

1.3.6 Biosynthesis of Ketocarotenoids

Ketocarotenoids comprise numerous types that have huge commercial value and medicinal utilization. Two different families of ketocarotenoids have been numerated. One of which belongs to *Synechocystis* β - Carotene ketolase (crtO) which introduces a 4-keto group in the β -ionone ring at the one end of β -Carotene to synthesize firstly the echinone and then ketolates the second end to generate cathaxanthin (Misawa, 2010; Fernandez-Gonzalez et al., 1997; Moise et al., 2014).

The second group of carotenoid ketolases include crtW which is found in marine bacteria and green algae. It catalyses introduction of keto groups at C-4 to make canthaxanthin (Misawa, 2010; Kajiwara et al., 1995; Moise et al., 2014). Experiments which included complementation assays in *E. coli* expressing carotenoid biosynthesizing gene indicated that in contrast to crtO, crtW could also introduce 4-keto groups into the substituted β -ring of zeaxanthin leading to the formation of ketocarotenoids for example astaxanthin (Makino et al., 2008; Choi et al., 2007; Moise et al., 2014).

1.4 Isolation and Functional Identification of Carotenoids Biosynthesis genes

The heterologous complementation expression system in *E. coli* offer unique tool for functional analysis of isolated new carotenoids biosynthesis genes from different organisms (Wurtzel et al., 1997). Carotenoid biosynthetic pathway in microorganisms, such as Erwinia uredovora (now, Pantoea ananatis) or Erwinia herbicola is specified by a gene cluster encoding biosynthetic enzymes that function in a pathway starting with the synthesis of geranylgeranyl pyrophosphate (GGPP) and ending in the synthesis of zeaxanthin glucosides (Sandmann, 1990; Misawa et al., 1990; Hundle et al., 1993). Complete carotenoid gene clusters or part of it from E. uredovora and E. herbicola have been introduced into Escherichia coli, which is otherwise a non-pigmented bacterium and such transformed E. coli engineered in a way that they accumulate a range of colorful carotenoids (Misawa et al., 1990; Misawa et al., 1993). Since carotenoids are derived from isoprenoid precursors E. coli can accumulate carotenoids by coupling an endogenous isoprenoid biosynthetic pathway with enzymes encoded by transformed genes of carotenogenic organisms such as *E. uredovora*. Hence, the biosynthetic pathway can be reconstructed in vivo even if the enzymes are of such diverse origin as those encoded by bacteria and plants (Misawa et al., 1994; Li et al., 1996; Chamovitz et al., 1992). The expression of carotenoid genes in *E. coli* has been useful for identifying function of gene products (Chamovitz et al., 1992; Cunningham et al., 1993;Sandmann, 1993), manipulation of the pathway (Hundle

et al., 1993; Sandmann and Misawa, 1992); investigating transcriptional regulators of carotenoids biosynthesis genes (Penfold Pemberton, 1994), and isolation of new genes encoding enzymes of the carotenoid biosynthetic pathway (Kajiwara et al., 1995) or enzymes catalyzing the synthesis of carotenoid precursors (Ohnuma et al., 1994).

Misawa et al., (1995) isolated and functionally identified the carotenoids biosynthesis genes cluster that included *CrtB* (phytoene synthase), *CrtI* (phytoene desaturase), crtW (β -Carotene ketolase) and *crtZ* (β -Carotene hydroxylase) from *A. aurantiacum* (now, *Paracoccus* sp. Strain N81106). The functional identification of the isolated gene cluster led them to propose astaxanthin biosynthetic pathway for the first time.

Misawa et al (1990) isolated and functionally identified the carotenoids *crtE* (GGPS equivalent), *crtX*, (Zeaxanthin glucosyltransferase) *crtY* (lycopene β -cyclase), *crtI* (phytoene desaturase), *crtB* (phytoene synthase), and *crtZ* (β -Carotene hydroxylase) gene cluster form *Erwinia uredovora* (now *Pantoea ananatis*) by analyzing carotenoids accumulated in *E. coli* transformants in which these genes were expressed. By analysis of accumulated carotenoids in the transformed *E. coli* by these individual genes they found that carotenoids in that pathway appear to be close to those in higher plants rather than to those in bacteria.

1.5 Sweetpotato Carotenoids Biosynthesis Genes, Cloning and Genetic Engineering

Although sweetpotato is highly important as a valuable source of carotenoids especially β -carotene, very little research has been done on molecular biological aspects of its carotenoid biosynthesis (Khan et al., 2016; Kim et al., 2014; Liao et al., 2007; Arizio et al., 2014).

Otani, (1993) developed and reported the first successful transformation protocol for the production of transformed (transgenic) sweetpotato plants that was based on the formation of hairy roots using leaf discs as explants for *Agrobacterium rhizogenes*. However, the regenerated transgenic plants showed some morphological abnormalities such as short storage-root and internodes. Later on, to overcome such anomalies, a modified and successful *Agrobacterium* *rhizogenes*-mediated transformation protocol was developed via somatic cell embryogenesis (Otani et al., 1996; Otani et al., 2001; Luo et al., 2006).

Liao et al., (2008) isolated and functionally characterized an isopentenyl diphosphate isomerase (idi) gene from sweetpotato cultivar YUSU 303 from South-east China. They isolated a full lenghth cDNA of idi gene by SMARTTM RACE cDNA Amplification Kit (Clontech, USA). Isolated idi was 1155bp with an open reading frame of 892bp encoding a polypeptide of 296 amino-acids (GenBank accession No. DQ150100). Isolated idi gene was cloned in pTrc expression vector and was fed to *E. coli* which contained pAC-BETA plasmid for β -carotene accumulation. *E. coli* were cultured and carotenoids were analyzed by color complementation. Cultures of *E. coli* which were transformed with idi gene turned orange indicative for β -carotene and suggested its potential activity in promoting β -carotene biosynthesis.

Kim et al., (2012) isolated a partial sequence with of phytoene synthase (PSY) which contained 354bp from a cultivar Shinhwangmi (accession No.HQ828092). It showed 94% sequence identity with a PSY isolated from Ipomoea species Kenyan (GenBank accession No. AB499050.1. However, no gene function of isolated PSY from sweetpotato could be reported.

Ling et al., (2013) isolated a lycopene ε - cyclase (LCYe) gene from sweetpotato cultivar Nongdafu 14 from China. However, they did not functionally characterize it. They isolated a full lenghth cDNA of *idi* gene by GeneRacer TM Kit (Invitrogen Carlsbad, CA, USA). Isolated LCYe was 1805bp with an open reading frame of 1236bp encoding a polypeptide of 411 amino-acids. Quantitative Real time PCR analysis showed that *IbLCYe* expression levels were desirably higher in roots as compared to those in leaves. Isolated LCYe gene was expressed in tobacco cultivar Winconsin 38. Carotenoids from transgenic tobacco plants were extracted and analysed by HPLC which revealed transgenes accumulating more β -carotene as compared to control plants.

Kim et al., (2014) isolated a partial lycopene β -cyclase (IbLCY- β) from a cultivar Yulmi of sweetpotato. They synthesized primers by using a partial sequence of IbLCY- β from data base with accession number JX393306. And amplified a partial cDNA of IbLCY- β by RT-PCR. By using isolated IbLCY- β an IbLCYb- β -RNAi vector was constructed and then used to transform white fleshed sweetpotato. Transformed sweetpotatos were cultured and analysed for accumulated carotenoids. Their results showed a total increase in the carotenoids contents along with increase in resistance against salt stress in transgenic sweetpotato as compared to the control. Significant levels of carotenoids genes expression were observed in all paint parts with highest expression in leaves to lowest in the fibrous roots. But in case of transgenic calli expressions of IbLCY- β were dramatically reduced and found high in non-transgenic calli. Lycopene was not produced both by transgenic and non-transgenic sweetpotato.

In an another experiment Kim et al., (2012) cloned a partial cDNA encoding β -carotene hydroxylase (CHY- β) from storage roots of sweetpotato cultivar Shinhwangmi and constructed a RNA-i-IbCHY- β vector for transformation of white-fleshed cultivar Yulmi and evaluation of inhibition effects of β -carotene hydroxylase (CHY- β) in transgenic lines. Down- regulation of IbCHY- β gene expression altered the content and degree of carotenoids between transgenic and non-transgenic cells with an increase in the β -carotene and total carotenoids in transgenic sweetpotato cells along with an increase in their ant-oxidation potential.

1.6 Metabolic Engineering of the Carotenoid Biosynthetic Pathway to Enhance Carotenoid Content in Higher Plants

The pathway engineering approach using a variety of carotenoid biosynthesis genes is becoming a potential approach in one of the most effective methods to generate large quantities of structurally diverse carotenoids (Misawa, 2011; Lee and Dannert-Schmidt, 2002; Giuliano et al.. 2008). Astaxanthin (3,30-dihydroxy-4,40-diketo-b-carotene) is a high-value ketocarotenoid that is biosynthesized only by a few organisms typically at low levels. This red pigment (produced through chemical synthesis) has been used in large amounts in aquaculture. Currently, natural astaxanthin is employed as a health food and is investigated for the treatment of a number of human diseases including cancers (Guerin et al., 2003). The limited renewable sources and growing demand for natural astaxanthin have attracted tremendous interest in engineering heterologous hosts, especially plants with the ability of sequestering 10 to 50-fold

higher carotenoids than microorgansims, to produce the high-value pigment during the past decade (Misawa 2009; Zhu et al., 2009). The most promising approach reaching high astaxanthin yields was by chloroplast transformation using a bacterial ketolase gene (Hasunuma et al., 2008). Plastid genome transformation of lattuce (Lactuca sativa) has similarly been site-specifically modified with the addition of three transgenes, which encoded $\beta_1\beta_2$ -carotenoid 3,3'-hydroxylase (*crtZ*) and β , β -carotenoid 4,4'-ketolase (4,4'-oxygenase; *crtW*) from a marine bacterium Brevundimonas sp. strain SD212, and isopentenyl diphosphate isomerase (idi) from a marine bacterium Paracoccus sp. strain N81106. The resultant transplastomic lettuce leaves generated 49.2 % astaxanthin fatty acid diester, 18.2 % astaxanthin monoester and 10.0 % astaxanthin in its free forms along with the 17.5 % of other ketocarotenoids. The ketocarotenoids produced in transplastomic lettuce were 94.9% of total carotenoids. The wild type native carotenoids analysed were 3.8% lactucaxanthin, and 1.3% lutein in the transplastomic lattuce (Harada et al., 2013). Likewise, by the introduction and heterologous expression of *crtW* gene, astaxanthin and other intermediates have been produced and reported in carrot (Daucus carota) roots (Javaraj et al., 2008) canola (Brassica napus) seeds (Fujisawa et al., 2009) and maize (Zea mays) endosperms (Zhu et al., 2008).

Through pathway engineering that utilizes the marine-bacterial carotenoid 4,4'-ketolase (4,4'-oxygenase) gene named *crtW*, unique keto-carotenoids such as astaxanthin diglucoside, 2,2'-dihydroxyastaxanthin, and 2,2'-dihydroxycanthaxanthin have been produced in *Escherichia coli* (Yokoyama et al., 1998; Nishida et al., 2005) and 4-ketoantheraxanthin in tobacco (*Nicotiana tabacum*).plants (Shindo et al., 2008). Breitenbach et al. (2014) also synthesized α -echinenone (4-keto- α -carotene) in rice callus using *crtW*. Recently, 4-keto-zeinoxanthin was produced in *E. coli* cells by introducing the bacterial *crtW* gene and carotenogenic genes from liverwort (Maoka et al., 2014).

24

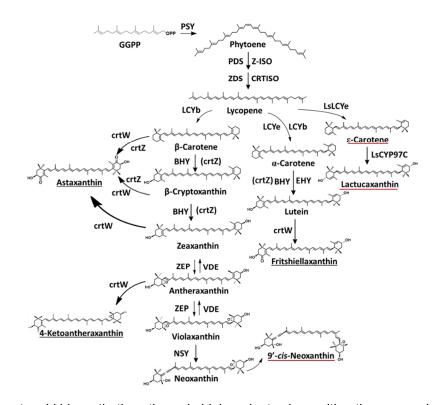


Figure 5. Carotenoid biosynthetic pathway in higher plants along with g the summarized illustration for the introduction and function of heterologous *crtW* and *crtZ* genes. Expressed in tobacco (Hasunuma et al., 2008) and lettuce (Harada et al., 2014) leaves, the, carotenoids shown black represent native carotenoids accumulated by both tobacco and lattuce, black and underlined are those reported from both of the transgenic tobacco and lattuce. Carotenoids underlined red are reported from lettuce only. **GGPS**, Geranylgeranyl pyrophosphate synthase; **PSY**, phytoene synthase; **PDS**, phytoene desaturase; **ZDS**, ζ -carotene desaturase; **CRTISO**, Carotenoid isomerase; **LCYb**, lycopene β -cyclase; **LCYe**, lycopene ϵ -cyclase; **LsLCYe**, lattuce **LCYe**; **LsCYP97C**, lettuce heme-containing cytochrome P450-type carotene ϵ - ring hydroxylase; **BHY**, Non-heme di-iron type carotene β -ring hydroxylase; **EHY**, carotene ϵ - ring hydroxylase; **ZEP**, zeaxanthin epoxidase; **VDE**, violaxanthin de-epoxidase; **NSY**, neoxanthin synthase

1.6.1 Metabolic Engineering of the Carotenoids Biosynthetic Pathway in Sweetpotato

Metabolic engineering of carotenoid biosynthetic pathway using a combinatorial approach has led to the efficient production of interesting carotenoids of high commercial value and pharmaceutical potential (Umeno and Arnold, 2004; Misawa, 2010; Misawa, 2011). It was reported that sweetpotato contained not only β -carotene but also several epoxy carotenoids unique to the sweetpotato tubers *e.g.*, β -carotene-5, 8-epoxside and β -carotene-5, 8, 5'8'-diepoxside (Maoka et al.,

2007). Therefore, it was assumed that new structural carotenoids with epoxy and keto groups can be produced by expressing the ketolase *crtW* gene in sweetpotato tubers. Recently, marine-bacterial genes that include the *crtW* gene encoding carotenoid 4,4'-ketolase (Shindo et al., 2008) was introduced into sweetpotato cultivar W71 under the control of the CaMV promoter consequently, novel carotenoids with epoxy and keto groups 1, 2, and 3 were obtained along with a series of ketocarotenoids. The structural elucidation of these novel epoxy-keto carotenoids along with biosynthetic pathway in sweetpotato was also proposed (Maoka et al., 2016)

'White Star' (WS) and W71, which produce white- and orange-fleshed tubers, respectively, are important sweetpotato cultivars, since they are amenable to *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation (Khan et al., 2016; Maoka et al., 2016; Gama et al., 1996; Takahata et al., 2010). Chemical analysis of the carotenoids, isolation and functional characterization of carotenoids biosynthesis genes and of these two cultivars have not been performed so far (Khan et al., 2016).

Although HPLC is a routine analytical tool to analyses various gene products from plants, highly developed and comprehensive metabolome analytical techniques with respect to particular tissues now offer precise analytical approaches such as nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR), and accurate mass spectrometry (MS) techniques (Keeler and James, 2010; Fraser and Bramley, 2006, Moing et al., 2011). Novel carotenoids produced by foreign carotenoids genes expressed has been successfully nalysed and identified by UV-vis, ESI-MS, ¹H-NMR, CD Spectral data and COSY and NOESY experiments (Maoka et al., 2016).

26

1.7 OBJECTIVES

The present study was planned to:

- Elucidate carotenoid biosynthesis genes in sweetpotato cultivars WS and W71 through chemical analysis of their carotenoids as well as structural and functional identification of their carotene cyclases and carotene hydroxylase genes.
- Transform sweetpotato cultivar W71 tubers with β-carotene ketolase (crtW) genes and elucidate the accumulation of novel carotenoids.

2. MATERIALS AND METHODS

2.1 Plant Material

The present study, comprised sweetpotato [*I. batatas* (L.) Lam] carotenoid analysis from leaves and tubers, isolation and functional identification of carotenoids biosynthesis genes along with their expression analysis, in two cultivars of sweetpotato. For these purposes, WS and W71, were used which produce white-and orange-fleshed tuberous roots (tubers), respectively. Both cultivars were bred in the USA (Takahata et al., 2010; Mullen et al., 1981). The vines (ca. 25 cm in length) of each cultivar were planted into Wagner pots (159 mm in diameter and 190 mm in height) containing culture soil [Engeibaido 1 (Nihon Hiryo, Tokyo, Japan)] in a greenhouse. After 5 months of growth, tubers were harvested from each cultivar. Cultivar W71 was used for metabolic engineering of carotenoids biosynthetic pathway in sweetpotato, using ketolase (*crtW*)

2.1.1 Bacterial Strains

Competent cells of *Escherichia coli* DH5 α (Toyobo) were used as host strain for all type of general plasmids DNA manipulation aimed for cloning and sequence analysis of carotenoids biosynthesis genes with appropriate cloning vectors at each cloning stage. For gene expression analysis, *Escherichia coli* strain BL21 (DE3) was used with appropriate expression vector for each gene. BL21 (DE3) is a chemically competent *E. coli* cell suitable for transformation and high level protein expression using a T7 RNA polymerase-IPTG induction system. Whereas for the transgenic expression of bacterial ketolase gene, *crtW* (β -Carotene 4,4'-oxygenase), in Sweetpotato cultivar W71, *Agrobacterium* strain EHA101 was used with appropriate binary expression vector and promoter. Originally, this gene was reported from *Brevundimonas aurantiaca* accession number AY166610 by Misawa et al., (1995).

2.2 Carotenoid Analysis from Leaves and Tubers of Sweetpotato

2.2.1 Carotenoids Extraction from Leaves and Tubers of Sweetpotato Cultivars

Extraction of carotenoids from the leaves and tubers of the two sweetpotato cultivars and subsequent chromatographic and spectroscopic analyses were carried out as follows: Total carotenoids were extracted from leaves and tubers with acetone at room temperature. The extract was concentrated to a small volume in vacuo and partitioned with *n*-hexane-diethyl ether (1:1, v/v) and water. The organic layer was evaporated to dryness and submitted to LC/MS analysis. The total carotenoid contents were calculated employing an extinction coefficient of $E_{cm}^{1\%} = 2400$ at λ max. The ether-hexane solution was evaporated. In the case of leaf carotenoid analysis, chlorophylls were removed by treatment with 5% (w/v) KOH/MeOH. The residue was subjected to analysis in a LC/photodiode-array detection (PDA)/MS system.

2.2.2 HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids Extracted from Leaves and Tubers

The LC/PDA/MS analysis of carotenoids was carried out using a Waters Xevo G2S QTof mass spectrometer equipped with an Acquity UPLC system. UV-Visible (UV-VIS) absorption spectra were recorded from 200 to 600 nm by PDA. The electro-spray ionization (ESI) time-of-flight (TOF) MS spectra were acquired by scanning from *m*/*z*100 to 1500 with a capillary voltage of 3.2 kV, cone voltage of 40 eV, and source temperature of 120 °C. Nitrogen was used as a nebulizing gas at a flow rate of 30 L/h. An Acquity 1.7 µm BEH UPLC C18 column (Waters) was used as a stationary phase with the mobile phase of: AcCN-water (85:15, v/v)→AcCN-MeOH (65:35), with a column temperature of 40 °C, at the flow rate of 0.4 mL/min.

2.2.3 Identification and Quantification of Carotenoids in Sweetpotato Leaves and Tubers

Carotenoids from leaves and tubers of sweetpotato W71 and WS cultivars were identified by analyzing the spectroscopic data of individual carotenoids. Carotenoid composition in the leaves of both sweetpotato cultivars was calculated based on the HPLC chromatograms.

2.3 Isolation and Analysis of Nucleic Acids

2.3.1 Isolation and Purification of RNA from Sweetpotato

Following the protocol reported by Takahata et al., (2010), total RNA, from cultivars WS and W71 was isolated and further purified by using an RNeasy Mini Kit (QIAGEN, Hilden, Germany) according to the protocol provided by the manufacturer. Total Polyadenylated mRNA then treated with DNase I to remove any contaminating genomic or foreign DNA.

2.3.2 Synthesis of the First-Strand Complementary DNA (cDNA Synthesis)

Using 1µg of total RNA, first strand cDNAs were synthesized with an oligo-dT primer in a reaction catalyzed by reverse transcriptase (RT), ReverTra Ace (Toyobo, Osaka, Japan). Incubations were first at 42 °C for 20 min, swiftly shifted to 99 °C for 5 min, and at the end cooled down at 4 °C and stored at –30 °C until the next use. Total reaction consisted of 20µl constituting 1µg RNA, 4µl of 5×RT buffer, 2µl dNTP mix, 1µl oligo dT primer, 1µl RNase inhibitor, 2µl Reverse TraAce and 8.8µl of sH2O. After mixing in ice the reaction tubes were first incubated at 42°C for 20min then swiftly shifted to 99°C for 5 min and then cooled to 4°C and stored at -30°C for use in PCR amplifications that utilized whole cDNA.

2.3.3 Agarose Gel Electrophoresis

For plasmid DNA or gel-extracted DNA analyses, agarose gels were prepared as 1% agarose gels in 1x Tris-Acetate-EDTA (1 x TAE buffer). For RNA electrophoresis, 1 x TAE buffer was prepared in sterilized water. After run completion, gels were viewed on AE-6905H Image Saver HR with a blue-light transilluminator installed gel documentation system (BIOINSTRUMENT ATTO) and documented using a computer installed with it.

2.3.4 Extraction and Purification of DNA Fragments from Agarose Gels

DNA fragments of the target sizes were excised from agarose gels using sterile scalpel blades and purified using QIAquick Gel Extraction Kit (Qiagen) by following the protocol provided by the manufacturer.

2.3.5 Isolation and Purification of Plasmid DNA

E. coli colonies, transformed with either any of the PCR-product amplified by appropriate primer and ligated in a suitable cloning vector or, those which were fed with a suitable expression vector for a gene isolate were used to inoculate 3 ml of autoclaved and cooled down 2YT media supplemented with appropriate antibiotic (Sigma) and incubated at 37 °C with shaking bath (rpm) overnight or ~ 16 hr. Plasmids were extracted by using the QIAprep Spin Miniprep Kit (QIAGEN) according to the protocol provided by the manufacturer.

2.3.6 Restriction Digestion Reactions

Restriction digestion reactions were performed in a total volume of 50-100 μ l consisting of 1X reaction buffer, 2 – 10 ng of plasmid DNA and 1 unit of appropriate restriction enzyme. For example during cloning of the RACE-PCR products in pGEMT easy vectors, (Promega), restriction digestion with *EcoRI* restriction enzyme was used to excise gene fragments. Reactions were incubated for at least 1.0-1.5 hr in incubator at 37 °C. After incubations the products of restriction were analyzed by gel electrophoresis.

2.3.7 DNA Sequencing

After appropriate size confirmation by restriction with a suitable restriction enzyme (as per each experiment requirement), the identity of insert from PCR, RACE) reactions were confirmed by DNA sequencing using either gene-specific primers or M13 universal primers. The sequencing reaction (5µl) consisted of 1µM primer, 150 – 300 ng of plasmid DNA, 5x sequencing buffer and 0.5 µl of BigDye Terminator v3.1 enzyme mix (Applied Biosystems). The thermocycling conditions included an initial denaturation at 96 °C for 1 min followed by 30 cycles at 96 °C for 10 sec, 50 °C for 5 sec and 60 °C for 4 min. The reaction was held at 4°C and DNA

sequences were analyzed by capillary electrophoresis on 3130 Genetic Analyzer Applied Biosystems (Thermo Fisher Scientific).

2.3.8 DNA Sequence Analysis

DNA sequences were analyzed using DNASIS DNA analysis software (Hitachi Solutions, Tokyo, Japan). The ABI files were converted into DNA sequence chromatogram files (SCF) using DNASIS pro. Homology search was performed by BLAST (http://blast.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Blast.cgi). By using algorithm program for aligning and DNA sequences (Zhang et al., 2000) and MegaBLAST module of BLAST that does the initial phase of finding short seeds for matches by searching a database index (Morgulis, et al., 2008) Amino acid sequences were aligned by CLUSTAL W (http://www.clustal.org/), and a neighbor-joining tree was constructed with a 500 bootstrap replication support using MEGA7 software (Takmura et al., 2013).Transit peptides of the gene products were predicted by ChloroP (http://www.cbs.dtu.dk/services/ChloroP/). Fake sequences and poorly aligned ends were manually trimmed using BioEdit software (https://www.bioedit.com) to increase the quality of the analysis, (Hall, 1999).

2.4 Amplification and Quantification of Nucleic Acids

2.4.1 Designing of Primers

Primers were designed for RACE-PCR based on the partial sequences of an *I. batatas* lycopene β -cyclase gene (*IbLCYb*; accession no. GQ283003) and an *I. batatas* lycopene ϵ -cyclase gene (*IbLCYe*; accession no. HQ828090) in the Genbank database. The primers for *IbBHY*, *IbCYP97A* and *IbCYP97B* were synthesized based on the homology search and the partial sequence data of sweetpotato β -Carotene hydroxylase gene (*IbBHY*: Genbank accession number HQ828095), and cytochrome P450-type monooxygenase *ItCYP97A* cytochrome P450, *ItCY97B* from *Ipomoea trifida* data bases respectively. The length of all primers ranged from 18 – 26 bp with a GC content of 35 – 36 %. The melting temperature (Tm) target was 55 – 68 °C. Internal secondary structures for example hairpins and dimers resulting from primer self- or cross-annealing, as well as sequence segments with repetitive bases and known single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), were avoided.

2.4.2 Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR)

PCR-amplification was carried out using a Takara PCR thermocycler (Takara, Japan). Generally, all PCR reactions constituted Emerald PCR mix (Takara, Shiga, Japan) 10 μ M of each primer (F and R), 10 ng of template and sH₂O to a final volume of 14 μ l. All PCRs were initially denatured at 95°C for 2 min followed by 30 cycles of 95°C for 30 sec, 52°C for 30s and 72°C for 1.5 min per bp or kb of expected PCR-product. A final extension step of 72°C for 4 min was included and samples were held at 4 °C until electrophoresis, gel extraction and purification or use in the subsequent procedure of ligation and plasmid or construct preparation etc.

2.4.3 Rapid Amplification of cDNA Ends (RACE)

Rapid amplification of cDNA ends (RACE) was performed in order to amplify the unknown flanking sequences of carotenoids biosynthesis genes in sweetpotato. Both 5′- and 3′-RACE were carried out using a SMART[™] RACE cDNA Amplification Kit (Clontech, USA), following manufacturer's instructions.

2.4.4 Quantitative Real-Time PCR Analysis

Expression analysis of the two genes was performed by real-time PCR. Total RNA was extracted from sweetpotato leaves and tubers using an RNeasy Plant mini kit (Qiagen, Hilden, Germany), and treated with DNase I. One microgram each of total RNA was reverse-transcribed with oligo-dT primer using PrimeScript RT Master Mix (Takara, Shiga, Japan). Amplification in real-time PCR was performed using SYBR Premix DimerEraser (Takara), and data analysis was carried out using the ABI 7300 Real Time PCR System (Life Technologies). The expression levels of various genes were normalized by the actin gene IbACT7 as reference gene for the internal control.

The primers used in real-time PCR are shown in Table 4 (Results Chapter).

2.5 Cloning and Functional Identification of Carotenoids Genes

2.5.1 Ligation Reactions for RACE-PCR/PCR-Products with pGEMT Easy Vector, pBluescriptII K⁺ Vector, pETDuet Vectors and pRSFDuet Vectors

DNA fragments generated by PCR, 3'-RACE-PCR and/or5'-RACE-PCR including nested RACE-PCR, or plasmids fragments of restriction digestion were purified from agarose gels using QIAquick Gel Extraction Kit (Qiagen) and ligated with pGEM®-T Easy vector (Promega). Gel-Purified DNA fragments were ligated in a final reaction volume of 3 µl with an insert: vector ratio of approximately 1:1. All ligations contained 1 U of Ligation High Ver.2 Ligase (Takara). Reactions were incubated at 16 °C for overnight or up to 16 hr. For purpose of sequencing and complete cDNA isolation, target fragments were ligated with pBluescriptII K^{+} Vector (Cm^r), cloning vector (Toyobo, Tokyo, Japan) for *E. coli* with an insert: vector ratio of 1.4:0.6. pBluescriptII K⁺ Vector (Cm^r), is a useful cloning vector supplied with a *lacZ* gene which makes it spesific for X-gal (Appedix) blue/white colony screening. This method of screening is convenient for distinguishing a successful recombinant cloning products from unsuccessful ones. For gene expression vectors such as pETDuet, Amp^r and pRSFDuet, Km^r Vectors, (Merck) Millipore, Darmstadt, Germany) insert: vector ratios of 1.4:0.6 and/or 1:1 were used. For ligations, Ligation high Ver.2 (Toyobo) was applied.

2.5.2 Preparation of Heat-Shock Competent E. coli

Based on Inoue et al., (1990), DH5 α cells were prepared and stored in 50-500µl aliquots, in liquid N₂ and stored at -80°C.

2.5.3 Transformation of Competent *E. coli* DH5α and BL21 (DE3) Cells

For transformation, 200 µl of frozen competent cells were thawed on ice. Approximately, 1.5µl of ligation reactions were added to the competent cells and the mixture was then incubated on ice for 30 min. Cells were heat-shocked at 42 °C for 45-60sec and swiftly transferred again to ice for 2 min. Approximately 1mL of liquid SOC medium was added and the tubes were incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr. After incubation, the tubes then containing the transformed *E. coli* were

centrifuged @10000rpm for 2min and supernatant was discarded leaving approximately 200 μ l of the bacterial culture transformed cells which were then vortexed and inoculated in petri dishes on 2YT supplemented with 100 μ g/ml of appropriate antibiotic depending upon the experimental requirement. Plates were incubated at 37 °C overnight. After overnight incubation, desired colonies (e.g., white colonies in case of pBluescriptII K⁺ vector) which represented the transformed *E. coli* were selected to inoculate into 2YT liquid culture tubes with appropriate antibiotics overnight for subsequent plasmid DNA extraction and analysis.

2.5.4 Culture Media for E. coli

E. coli culture tubes were made by selecting and inoculating single colonies from paltes containing transformed *E. coli* by inoculation into 2YT media, supplemented with appropriate selection antibiotics. *E. coli* liquid cultures were incubated at 37°C for up to 16 hrs on shaking bath.

2.5.5 Plasmids Used for the Heterologous Complementation Expression System in *E. coli* for Functional Identification of Isolated Carotenoids Biosynthesis Genes from Sweetpotato

pACCRT-EIB plasmid comprising gene cluster for lycopene synthesis (Misawa et al., 1990; Cunningham et al., 1993) was used to elucidate *IbLCYb* and *IbLCYe* genes from sweetpotato cultivars WS and W71. pACHP-Beta plasmid which has genes for β -carotene synthesis was used to explore the activity of IbBHY, IbCYp97A and IbCYP97B genes . Whereas, *E. coli* competent cells having pACCRT-EIB and pETDuet-MpLCYb/MpLCYe (Takemura et al., 2014) that accumulate lycopene and α -carotene were used for functional analysis of IbCYp97A and IbCYP97B from WS and W71 cultivars. pACHP-Beta, has been constructed by manipulating *Haematococcus pluvialis* pACCAR16DcrtX (Misawa et al. 1995) plasmid. First, the idi gene was isolated from pHP11 (Kajiwara et al. 1997; accession no. AB019034) with Xhol and Notl, and inserted into the Aval-Sall site of pACCAR16DcrtX (Misawa et al., 1995) with an amplified Notl Sall fragment including the *Pantoea ananatis crtE* gene (Takemura et al., 2015).

2.6 Analysis of Carotenoids from Transformed E. coli

2.6.1 Extraction of Carotenoids

Extraction of carotenoids from recombinant *E. coli* was carried out by the method described (Fraser et al., 2000). First of all vortexed the tubes that contained the transformed *E. coli* which had accumulated carotenoids in their bodies after 2 days of culturing in 10mL of 2YT with appropriate selective antibiotic and IPTG at 21°C on a shaker in an incuabtor @200rpm. Also took equal number of new clean conical tubes, tagged and poured the vortexed culture to clean conical tubes one by one corresponding to the tag on original culture tubes.

Now took new sterilized microtubes (three for each culture containing conical tube), tagged correspondingly and weighed. Now centrifuged the conical tubes @8000rpm at room temperature and discarded the supernatant by pipette gently and completely and noted down the color of pallet. Added 1mL of STE buffer into pallet of each conical tube, mixed, and dissolved the pallet completely in it by pipette. Shifted the dissolved pallet in equal volumes to three new microtubes from each conical tube and centrifuged all microtubes @15000rpm for 1minute. Discarded the supernatant completely and dried pallets were weighed again to calculate the weight of pallet.

2.6.2 Chloroform Based Carotenoids Extractions

Added 200µl of methanol to all microtubes containing dried pallet and mixed on vortex at maximum speed for 5-10 min and finger-tapped during vortex to dissolve pallet in methanol well. Then, added 50µl of Tris-HCl and 150µl of 1M NaCl and mixed by vortexed for 2-5 min. At the end added 200µl of chloroform vortexed, mixed, and centrifuged the microtubes @8000 for 5 min at 4°C. After centrifugation, took new clean tubes tagged and poured lower phase correspondingly. All the tubes were shifted to concentrator (Tomy) and put the tubes into holes with lids opened. Set and turned the concentrator on for 1:30 hr. After the samples were completely dried out shifted them to -21°C until analyzed by HPLC.

2.6.3 HPLC Analysis and Identification of Extracted Carotenoids

Dried residues were re-suspended in ethyl acetate and applied to HPLC in a Waters Alliance 2695–2996 (PDA) system (Milford, CT, USA). HPLC was

performed according to the method described (Yokohama, 1995) using a TSKgel ODS-80Ts column (4.6×150 mm, 5 µm; Tosoh, Tokyo, Japan) at a flow rate of 1.0 mL/min at 25 °C with solvent A (water-MeOH, 5:95, v/v) for 5 min, followed by a linear gradient from solvent A to solvent B (tetrahydrofuran: MeOH, 3:7, v/v) for 5 min, and solvent B alone for 8 min.

Individual carotenoids were identified by comparing retention times and absorption spectra with those of the authentic standards (Takemura et al., 2014). To separate α - and β -carotene, an isocratic method was applied. HPLC was performed on a Nova-pak HR 6 μ C18 column (3.9×300 mm; Waters) at a flow rate of 1.0 mL/min at 25 °C with the solvent [acetonitrile (AcCN)-MeOH-2-propanol, 90: 6:4, v/v/v] for 80 min.

2.7 Maintenance of Desirable E. coli Clones by Cryopreservation

The successful colons from culture plates were maintained by cryopreservation. For this purpose, colony of choice was inoculated in 3mL of liquid 2YT culture tubes with appropriate antibiotic based on the cloning or expression vector used and incubated overnight. Next day, the culture tubes containing cultures of choice were shifted to clean bench and 1mL of culture was poured into cryovials containing 70µl dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), tagged properly and stored at -80 °C.

2.8 Transformation of Sweetpotato W71 Tubers with Bacterial Ketolase *crtW* Genes

2.8.1 Preparation of CrtW Gene constructs for Expression in W71 Tuber

The *crtW* gene constructs were prepared by the following the method reported earlier by Hasunuma et al., (2008).

2.8.2 Transformation of Agrobacterium Strain EHA101 Cells with crtW Gene

Construct

After performing all construction with the auxiliary plasmid (modified pUC19), the gene cassette part were excised with 8 base recognition enzymes PacI and Sall and ligated into the pZH2B binary vector as described earlier (Kuroda et al., 2010; Hajdukiewicz et al., 1994).

2.8.3 *Agrobacterium* Mediated Transformation and Culturing of W71 Sweetpotato Tuber.

The pZH2B binary vector harboring the crtW construct was used to transform the *Agrobacterium* strain EH101 (Cm^r) by electroporation as described earlier (Fujisawa et al., 2009). Culturing of transformed sweetpotato W71 tuber cells was performed by following the protocol reported by Otani et al., (2003) with modifications that will be reported later.

2.9 Analysis of Carotenoids from transgenic Sweetpotato

2.9.1 Extraction of Carotenoids

Carotenoids were extracted from 10 g of the tubers of the *crtW* gene-expressed sweetpotato with 5% KOH methanol at room temperature. The extract was partitioned with *n*-hexane-diethyl ether (1:1) and water. Then, the organic layer was evaporated to dryness and submitted for silica gel column chromatography and HPLC-PDAanalysis described in detail in the results chapter (Maoka et al., 2016).

2.9.2 HPLC-PDA Analysis and Identification of Extracted Carotenoids

Carotenoid was extracted from 100 g of *crtW* gene-induced sweetpotato tubers with acetone at room temperature. The acetone extract was concentrated to a small volume in *vacuo* and partitioned with *n*-hexane-diethyl ether (1:1) and water. The organic layer was evaporated to dryness and submitted for silica gel column chromatography.

The fraction(s) eluted with n-hexane and/or acetone contained different carotenoids which were identified separately by by UV-vis, ESI-MS, ¹H-NMR, CD spectral data and COSY and NOESY experiments (Maoka et al., 2016).

38

3. RESULTD AND DISCUSSIONS

3.1 CHEMICAL ANALYSIS OF CAROTENOIDS FROM SWEETPOTATO

3.1.1 HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids from the leaves and tubers of Sweetpotato

Two sweetpotato (I. batatas) cultivars, WS and W71, were selected as representative genotypes, exhibiting white and orange tuberous roots (tubers), respectively, since they have also been used in Agrobacterium mediated transformation (Gama et al., 1996; Takahata et al., 2010; Maoka et al., 2016). Carotenoid pigments were extracted from the two cultivars and subjected to HPLC-PDA-HRMS analysis. Figure 6 shows HPLC chromatograms of carotenoids extracted from the leaves (A) and tubers (B) of cultivar WS. Table 1 contains the spectroscopic data of the individual carotenoids appearing in Figure 6. While, Table 2 shows the carotenoid composition in the leaves and tubers of sweetpotato cultivars WS and W71, which was calculated based on the HPLC chromatograms in figure 6 for WS whereas, data for W71 is not shown here. Carotenoid composition in the leaves of both sweetpotato cultivars was substantially the same as that of other higher plant leaves mediating photosynthesis, i.e. their carotenoids contain approximately 45–50% lutein and approximately 30% β-carotene as the two predominant carotenoids, along with neoxanthin and violaxanthin, and often with small amounts of β -cryptoxanthin, antheraxanthin, zeaxanthin and α -carotene (Goodwin, 1988). Meanwhile, the tubers of cultivars WS and W71 were found to contain unique carotenoids that were composed of β -carotene-5,8-epoxide (9.4%) and 4.6% of the total carotenoids, respectively), β -carotene-5,6,5',8'-diepoxide (35.7% and 9.2%), and β -carotene-5,8,5',8'-diepoxide (25.1% and 13.8%). Moreover, the WS and W71 tubers were found to contain ipomoeaxanthin A (4.5%) and β -cryptoxanthin-5',6'-epoxide (2.2%), respectively. Their chemical structures are shown in Figure 7. Such rare carotenoids had previously been identified as unique constituents of the tubers of the Japanese sweetpotato cultivar "Benimasari" (Maoka et al., 2007). It is likely that sweetpotato tubers generally contain rare carotenoids that include a 5,6-epoxy- β -ring and/or a 5,8-epoxy- β -ring in their structures, since WS and W71 were bred in USA, they should be genetically distant from the Japanese cultivar "Benimasari".

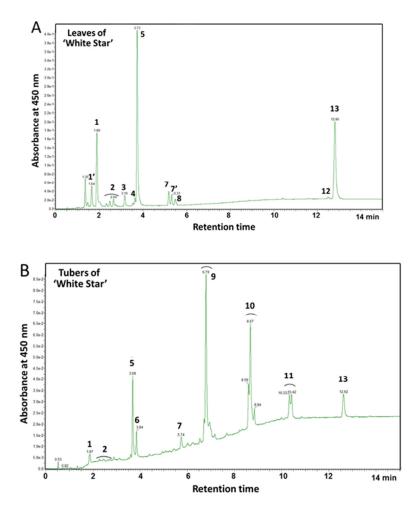


Figure 6. HPLC chromatograms of carotenoids extracted from the leaves (A) and tubers (B) of sweetpotato (*Ipomoeoa batatas*) cultivar WS. An Acquity 1.7 μm BEH UPLC C18 column (Waters) was used, as described in the Materials and Methods Chapter. Identification of peaks: 1', neochrome; 1, neoxanthin; 2, violaxanthin (including auroxanthin); 3, antheraxanthin; 4, zeaxanthin; 5, lutein; 6, ipomoeaxanthin A; 7, 9-*cis*-lutein, 7', 13-*cis*-lutein; 8, β-cryptoxanthin; 9, β-carotene-5,6,5',8'-diepoxide (stereoisomers); 10, β-carotene-5,8,5',8'-diepoxide (stereoisomers); 11, β-carotene-5,8-epoxide (stereoisomers); 12, α-carotene; 13, β-carotene. Neochrome (peak 1') and auroxanthin (some in peak 2) are considered to be formed from neoxanthin and violaxanthin, respectively, during the extraction process. Peaks 9, 10 and 11 are individually composed of

several peaks, which are thought to contain stereoisomers, and sometimes geometrical isomers generated during the extraction process.

Number ^a	Carotenoid	UV-VIS nm	ESI TOF MS <i>m/z</i>
1′	Neochrome	405, 428, 450	601.4232 (M ⁺ , C ₄₀ H ₅₇ O ₄)
1	Neoxanthin	414, 439, 469	$601.4232 (M^+, C_{40}H_{57}O_4)$
2	Violaxanthin	414, 439, 469	601.4232 (M ⁺ , C ₄₀ H ₅₇ O ₄)
2	Auroxanthin	376, 399, 423	$601.4232 (M^+, C_{40}H_{57}O_4)$
3	Antheraxanthin	425, 446, 473	$568.4299 (M^+ C_{40}H_{56}O_2), 551.4246 (M^+-H_2O_2)$
4	Zeaxanthin	(425), 451, 477	$568.4299 (M^+ C_{40}H_{56}O_2)$
5	Lutein	425, 446, 473	$568.4299 (M^+ C_{40}H_{56}O_2), 551.4246 (M^+-H_2O_2)$
6	Ipomoeaxanthin A	425, 446, 473	586.4410 (M ⁺ C ₄₀ H ₅₈ O ₃)
7	9-cis-Lutein	422, 441, 468	568.4299 (M ⁺ C ₄₀ H ₅₆ O ₂), 551.4246 (M ⁺ -H ₂ O
7'	13-cis-Lutein	420, 439, 465	568.4299 (M ⁺ C ₄₀ H ₅₆ O ₂), 551.4246 (M ⁺ -H ₂ O
8	β-Cryptoxanthin	(425), 451, 477	552.4327 (M ⁺ C ₄₀ H ₅₆ O)
9	β -Carotene-5,6, 5',8'-diepoxide	405, 426, 451	569.4348 (MH ⁺ C ₄₀ H ₅₇ O ₂)
10	β -Carotene-5,8, 5',8'-diepoxide	379, 399, 424	569.4348 (MH ⁺ C ₄₀ H ₅₇ O ₂)
11	β-Carotene-5,8-epoxide	400, 426, 451	552.4327 (M ⁺ C ₄₀ H ₅₆ O)
12	α-Carotene	425, 446, 473	536.4383 (M ⁺ C ₄₀ H ₅₆)
13	β-Carotene	(425), 451, 477	536.4383 (M ⁺ C ₄₀ H ₅₆)
	β -Cryptoxanthin-5',6'-epoxide ^b	425, 446, 473	$568.4299 (M^+ C_{40} H_{56} O_2)$

Table 1. Spectroscopic data of the individual carotenoids analyzed from sweetpotato cultivars W7 and WS. ^aNumbers correspond to those used in Figure 6. β -Cryptoxanthin-5', 6'-epoxide was detected only in cultivar W71.

	WS leaf	W71 leaf	'White Star' tuber	W71 tuber
Total carotenoid (µg/g FW)	34	170	0.5	4.0
Carotenoid composition	%	%	%	%
β-Carotene	30.7	31.1	7.3	59.3
α-Carotene	0.6		nd	nd
β-Cryptoxanthin	2.4			3.2
Zeaxanthin	0.7			trace
Lutein	43.2	46.8	13.7	2.0
cis-Lutein	3.3	3.3		
Antheraxanthin	1.8			
Violaxanthin (+ Auroxanthin)	12.3	3.5	0.9	
Neoxanthin (+ Neochrome)	3.6	6.4	1.5	
β-Carotene-5,8-epoxide	nd	nd	9.4	4.6
β-Carotene-5,6,5',8'-diepoxide	nd	nd	35.7	9.2
β-Carotene-5,8,5',8'-diepoxide	nd	nd	25.1	13.8
β-Cryptoxanthin-5',6'-epoxide	nd	nd	nd	2.2
Ipomoeaxanthin A	nd	nd	4.5	nd
Others	1.4	8.9	1.9	5.7

Table 2. Carotenoid content and composition in sweetpotato cultivars WS and W71.

Where 'nd', represents 'not detected'.

3.1.2 Proposed Biosynthetic Pathway of Carotenoids based on HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids from Sweetpotato

The carotenoid biosynthetic pathway in sweetpotato tubers, was proposed on the basis of the results is shown in Figure 7. The tubers of the three cultivars WS, W71 and "Benimasari" thus contain sweetpotato-specific carotenoids with the 5,6-epoxy- β -ring, rather than the epoxy carotenoids common to higher plant leaves, i.e. violaxanthin and antheraxanthin, with the 3-hydroxy-5,6-epoxy- β -ring. Therefore, sweetpotato tubers are likely to contain a novel enzyme that converts carotenoids possessing a β -ring, such as β -carotene and β -cryptoxanthin, into metabolites with a 5,6-epoxy- β -ring, such as β -carotene-5,6-epoxide and β -cryptoxanthin-5',6'-epoxide. Such a β -ring-epoxidation enzyme can be anticipated to have considerable homology to the ZEP (zeaxanthin epoxidase) enzyme, encoded by a ZEP paralog. A candidate gene has been cloned in our laboratory, awaiting functional analysis. Ipomoeaxanthin A is considered to be produced from β -carotene-5,6-epoxide by an unknown oxidizing enzyme. Meanwhile, carotenoids with an 5,8-epoxy- β -ring can arise non-enzymatically from precursors having an 5,6-epoxy- β -ring through an epoxy-furan transposition reaction.

42

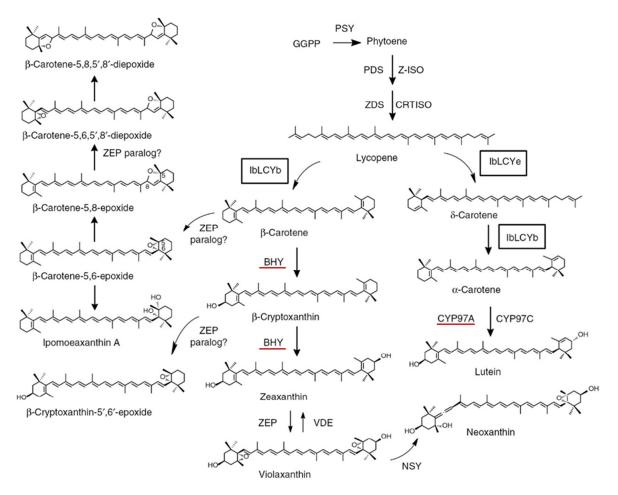


Figure 7. Proposed carotenoid biosynthetic pathway in the tubers of sweetpotato cultivars WS and W71. Ipomoeaxanthin A and β -cryptoxanthin-5',6'-epoxide were found only in the tubers of WS and W71, respectively. It was considered that β -carotene-5,8-epoxide was non-enzymatically produced from β -carotene-5,6-epoxide, which was not observed in either WS or W71. Carotenoids containing the 5,6-epoxy- β -ring are stereospecific compounds, while those containing the 5,8-epoxy- β -ring occur as stereoisomers (C-8). Carotene cyclases and hydroxylases elucidated in this work are boxed and underlined resepectively.

3.1.3 Conclusion

The carotenoid analyses of sweetpotato provided a molecular map for carotenoids with varied composition especially the oxygenated and or hydroxylated products. These results will support molecular cloning and elucidation of carotenoids biosynthesis genes and their pathway engineering based on the proposed biosynthesis pathway in sweetpotato for future nutritional, medicinal and industrial gains

3.2 ISOLATION OF LYCOPENE CYCLASE GENES FROM SWEETPOTATO **3.2.1** Isolation of Lycopene β -cyclase (*lbLCYb*) Genes from WS and W71 Cultivars of Sweetpotato.

3'and 5'-RACE were carried out by SMARTerTM RACE cDNA Amplification Kit (Clontech, Mountain View, CA, USA) according to the supplier's instructions. Primers were designed for RACE-PCR based on the partial sequences of an *I. batatas* lycopene β -cyclase gene (*IbLCYb*; accession no. GQ283003) and an *I. batatas* lycopene ϵ -cyclase gene (*IbLCYe*; accession no. HQ828090) in the Genbank database.

Primer Name	Primer Sequence 5'-3'	Restriction enzymes used	Gene Cloning Experiment Type
IbLCYbF1	GCGTATGGCATTCTGGCAGAAGTGG	EcoRI	3'-RACE
IbLCYeF1	CGAAGTCCTGGTATGGGTGATATGC		3'-RACE
IbLCYbF2	CATGGATTGGCGAGACTCTCACC		3'-RACE nested PCR
IbLCYeF2	CAAGCTTGGGAAACGCTTTGGCC		3'-RACE nested PCR
IbLCYbR1	AAGCCAGTTGCATCGAGAACCACAG		5'-RACE
IbLCYeR1	TGAATACCCTGTAGCGGGATGAACC		5'-RACE
IbLCYbR2	CATGGATTGGCGAGACTCTCACC		5'-RACE nested PCR
IbLCYeR2	CAAGCTTGGGAAACGCTTTGGCC		5'-RACE nested PCR
IbLCYbF3	CGTCGACATGGATACTCTGCTAAA	BamHI	pETDuet Cloning
IbLCYbR3	GGCGGCCGCTTAATCTATATCCTGTAAC	Sall	pETDuet Cloning
IbLCYeF3	CGGATCCATGGAGTGCATCGGAGCTC	BamHI	pETDuet Cloning
IbLCYeR3	CGTCGACTTACAGAGTGAGATAAGT	SalI	pETDuet Cloning

Table 3. Primers used in cloning and isolation of *IbLCYb* and *IbLCYb* genes from W71 and WS cultivars of sweetpotato.

The primers are summarized in **table 3.** As the first PCR primers for 3'-RACE of *IbLCYb* and IbLCYe, IbLCYbF1 and IbLCYeF1 were used, respectively. For the nested PCR amplification in 3'-RACE, respective nested gene-specific primers for IbLCYbF2 and IbLCYeF2 were used. Similarly, for the amplification of the IbLCYb and IbLCYe 5'-ends, IbLCYbR1 and IbLCYeR1 were used in the first PCR, respectively. For 5'-RACE, IbLCYbR2 and IbLCYeR2 were used as the nested PCR primers. Each RACE product was subcloned into the pGEM T-easy vector (Promega, Madison, WI, USA), followed by DNA sequencing. Full length cDNA sequences of *IbLCYb* and *IbLCYe* were obtained through the above PCRs. The full length cDNAs of the *IbLCYb*and *IbLCYe* genes were isolated by PCR amplification with a pair of primers: IbLCYbF3 and IbLCYbR3, and IbLCYeF3 and IbLCYeR3 respectively.

Two lycopene β -cyclase gene (*lbLCYb*) sequences were, isolated from sweetpotato cultivar WS, and named *lbLCYb1* and *lbLCYb2*. On the other hand, from W71, three lycopene β -cyclase genes, designated *lbLCYb3*, *lbLCYb4* and *lbLCYb5* were isolated. However, *lbLCYb3* and*lbLCYb4* were found to encode the same deduced amino acid sequences.

3.2.2 Isolation of Lycopene ε-Cyclase (*IbLCYe*) Genes from WS and W71 Cultivars

In the case of the lycopene ε -cyclase gene (*IbLCYe*), a single sequence, designated *IbLCYe*, was isolated from both WS and W71. Another putative lycopene ε -cyclase gene had previously been isolated from sweetpotato cultivar Nongdafu 14 (Ling et al., 2013) however, without functional identification of the gene product as ε -cyclase), which encoded a protein with an N-terminal region totally different from that of our IbLCYe, but the mature proteins were 97.9% identical.

3.2.3 Sequence Analysis and Alignments of *IbLCYb* and *IbLCYe* Genes

The nucleotide sequences of the sweetpotato carotene cyclase genes *IbLCYb* and *IbLCYe* cloned in the present study were submitted to DDBJ under accession number LC164788 (*IbLCYb*1), LC164789 (*IbLCYb*2), LC164790 (*IbLCYb*3), LC164791 (*IbLCYb*4), LC164792 (*IbLCYb*5), and LC164793 (*IbLCYe*). Sequence alignment of these isolated genes with other plant species is shown in figure 8 and 9. An inner deletion of 15 bases was noticed in *IbLCYb*5. The sweetpotato lycopene ε -cyclase reported by Ling et al., (2013), is not shown in this sequence alignment and phylogenetic analysis because its accession number was not available.

IbLCYb1 IbLCYb2 IbLCYb3 IbLCYb4 IbLCYb4 IbLCYb DcLCYb TaLCYb	1 1 1 1 1		enele Flh enele Flh enele Flh enele Flh enele Flh enele Flh enele Ff enele Ffn	I-HEGEA' I-HEGEA' I-HEGEA' I-HEGEA' I-HEGEA' I-HEGEEI I-IEGEEI I-IEGEEI	KASAFTSIR KASAFTSIR KASAFTSIR KASAFTSIR KASAFTSIR LCSNN KVGILSCIR	ECKODIRIOS ECKODIRIOS ECKODIRIOS ECKODIRIOS ECKODIRIOS EXHSRURIOV (FFNODIRIOS	50 IL SCRNVGR IL SCRNFGR IL SCRNFGR IL SCRNVGR IL SCRNVGR IL SCRNVGR IL SCRNVGR IL SCRNVGR IL SCRNVGR IL SCRNVGR	-VKASSSAL) -VKASSSAL) -VKASSSAL) -VKASSSAL) SVVSSSAL) SVVSSAAL) SVVSSAAL) SVKASSSAL	LELVE <mark>V</mark> TKKEN LELVEVTKKEN LELVEVTKKEN LELVEVTKKEN LELVEVTKKEN LELVETKKEN LELVE	LIFELEMFEE LIFELEMFEE LIFELEMFEE LIFELEMFEE LIFELEMFEE LIFELFLYDE	SK <mark>GI</mark> VVILA SKGIVVILA SKGIVVILA SKGIVVILA SKSQVVILA SNGIVVILA	NVGGGIAGLA NVGGGIAGLA NVGGGIAGLA NVGGGIAGLA NVGGGIAGLA NVGGGIAGLA NVGGGIAGLA	/AÇQVSÇAGL /AÇQVSÇAGL /AÇQVSÇAGL /AÇQVSÇAGL /AÇQVS /AÇQVS AGQVSEAGL /AÇQVSEAGL	SVCSI 113 SVCSI 113 SVCSI 113 SVCSI 113 SVCSI 113 SVCSI 108 SVCSI 111 AVVSI 119
IbLCYb2 IbLCYb3 IbLCYb4 IbLCYb5 AtLCYb DcLCYb	114 114 114 109 112 120	DPSEKLIWPN DPSEKLIWPN DPSEKLIWPN DPSEKLIWPN DPSEKLIWPN DPSEKLIWPN	NYGVWVDE NYGVWVDE NYGVWVDE NYGVWVDE NYGVWVDE NYGVWVDE	FEANDLLI FEANDLLI FEANDLLI FEANDLLI FEANDLLI FEANDLLI	CLDITWSCA CLDITWSCA CLDITWSCA CLDITWSCA CLDITWSCA CLDITWSCA CLDITWSCA	MVYIDIRTIK MVYIDIRTIK MVYIDIRTIK MVYIDIRTIK VVYVDEGVK IVYIDIQTIK	170 DEPEYGRVNF DEPEYGRVNF DEPEYGRVNF DEFEYGRVNF DEFEYGRVNF DEFEYGRVNF DEFEYGRVNF	KRLESKMEQI KRLESKMEQI KRLESKMEQI KRLESKMEQI KRLESKMEQI	KCIPNGVKFEQ KCIPNGVKFEQ KCIPNGVKFEQ KCIPNGVKFEQ KCISNGVKFEQ	AKVIKVIHEE AKVIKVIHEE AKVIKVIHEE AKVIKVIHEE SKVINVVHEE AKVVKVVHEE	SKSNLIGSD SKSNLIGSD SKSNLIGSD SKSNLIGSD ANS <mark>I</mark> VVGSD AKSILIGDD	GVTIQATVVII GVTIQATVVII GVTIQATVVII GVTIQATVVII GVKIQASVVII GVTIQAAVVII	DAIGFSFCLV DAIGFSFCLV DAIGFSFCLV DAIGFSFCLV DAIGFSFCLV DAIGFSFCLV	CYDKP 233 CYDKP 233 CYDKP 233 CYDKP 233 CYDKP 231 CYDKP 239
IbLCYb1 IbLCYb2 IbLCYb3 IbLCYb4 IbLCYb5 AtLCYb DeLCYb TaLCYb	234 234 234 229 232 240 215	VNDCVOUXVC		TUNTNUM	TMENDERT	NENT STREDN	290 KRIFTFIYAME KRIFTFIYAME KRIFTFIYAME KRIFTFIYAME SKIFTFIYAME SKIFTFIYAME SRIFTFIYAME SRUFTFIYAME	COOL TELE	TOTUNDECTE	MEDICEDMEN	DT DUT C DAU	PETERFEDOUT	T DVCC DT DUT	CODUM 252
IbLCYb2 IbLCYb3 IbLCYb4 IbLCYb5 AtLCYb5 DcLCYb	354 354 354 349 352 360	GIGCTAGMVH GIGCTAGMVH GIGCTAGMVH GIGCTAGMVH GIGCTAGMVH GIGCTAGMVH	ESTGYMVA ESTGYMVA ESTGYMVA ESTGYMVA ESTGYMVA ESTGYMVA	FTL2AAP FTL2AAP FTL2AAP FTL2AAP FTL2AAP FTL2AAP FTL2AAP	VANAIIQYI VANAIIQYI VANAIIQYI VANAIIQYI VANAIIQYI VANAIVYYI VANAIVCYI	.CSEFSILC .CSEFSILC .CSEFSILC .CSEFSILC .CSEFSILC .CSFSSNSIRC .CSFSSNSIRC	410 NEISASVWKDI NEISASVWKDI NEISASVWKDI NEISASVWKDI DQISASVWKDI NEISASVWKDI DQISASVWKDI DQISASVWKDI	WPIERRRCRI WPIERRRCRI WPIERRRCRI WPIERRRCRI WPIERRRCRI WPIERRRCRI WPIERRRCRI	EFFCFGMDIIL EFFCFGMDIIL EFFCFGMDIIL EFFCFGMDIIL EFFCFGMDIIL EFFCFGMDIIL	KIDI PATRRE KIDI PATRRE KIDI PATRRE KIDI PATRRE KIDI PATRRE KIDI PATRRE KIDI PATRRE	FDAFFDIEP FDAFFDIEP FDAFFDIEP FDAFFDIEP FDAFFDIEP FDAFFDIEP	RYWHGFLSSFI RYWHGFLSSFI RYWHGFLSSFI RYWHGFLSSFI RYWHGFLSSFI HYWHGFLSSFI RYWHGFLSSFI	AST 201 256) AST 251 256) AST 251 256) AST 251 256) AST 251 256) AST 251 256) AST 251 2556)	ISLFS 471 ISLFS 471 ISLFS 471 ISLFS 471 ISLFS 466 ISLFS 471 ISLFS 478
IbLCYb2 IbLCYb3 IbLCYb4 IbLCYb5 AtLCYb DcLCYb	472 472 472 467 472 472 479	49 HASNTSRIEI HASNTSRIEI HASNTSRIEI HASNTSRIEI HASNTSRIEI HASNTSRIEI HASNTSRIEI HASNTSRIEI	TKGILPL TKGILPL TKGILPL TKGILPL TKGILPL TKGIVPL	VNM INNI VNM INNI VNM INNI VNM INNI VNM INNI 2KM INNI VNM INNI	QD II - 501 QD II - 496 QD RI - 501 KD RE - 508	- - - -								

Figure 8. Alignment of *IbLCYb* with other plant LCYb proteins. The alignment was performed with MEGA7.0 (Tamura et al., 2013) using default settings. Dashes represent alignment gaps. Conserved amino acid residues in the alignment have a black background, while similar amino acids have grey background. Numbers on the right denote the number of amino acid residues. All conserved amino acid residues in the alignment have a black background, while similar amino acids have grey background. Conserved motif FLEET which is essential for establishing activity is underlined red. GenBank accession numbers of the aligned amino acid sequences from other plants are include: *Arabidopsis* LCYb (AtLCYb), U50739; carrot LCYb (DcLCYb), DQ192190; wheat LCYb (TaLCYb), N622196.1

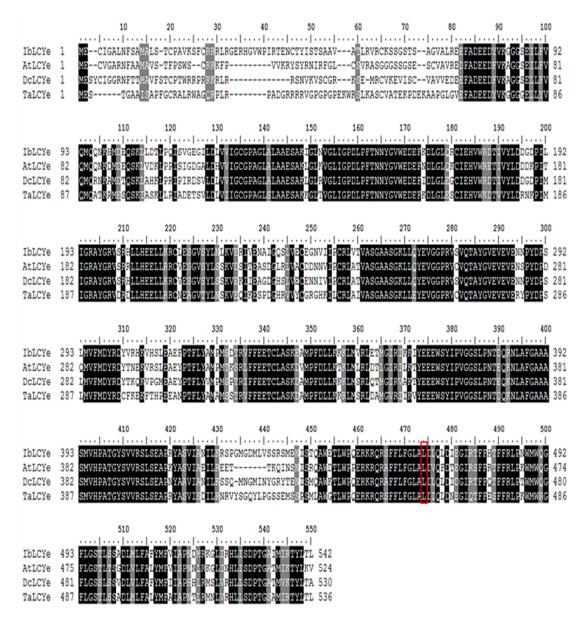


Figure 9. Alignment of IbLCYe with other plant LCYe proteins. The alignment was performed with MEGA7.0 (Tamura et al., 2013) using default settings. Dashes represent alignment gaps. Conserved amino acid residues in the alignment have a black background, while similar amino acids have grey background. Numbers on the right denote the number of amino acid residues. All conserved amino acid residues in the alignment have a black background, while similar amino acids have grey background. Amino acid residues shown inside red box are the L448 in *Arabidopsis* which are important conserved residues for determination of the number of ε-rings. GenBank accession numbers of the aligned amino acid sequences from other plants include: *Arabidopsis* LCYe (AtLCYe), U50738.1; carrot LCYe (DcLCYe), DQ192192.1; wheat LCYe (TaLCYe), EU649787.

3.2.4 Phylogenetic Analysis of IbLCYb and IbLCYe Proteins from Plants species

Phylogenetic analysis of the deduced proteins encoded by the isolated sweetpotato carotene cyclase genes, compared to other known carotene cyclases of higher plants is shown in Figure 10. *IbLCYb* (1–5) and IbLCYe shown in dotted boxes.

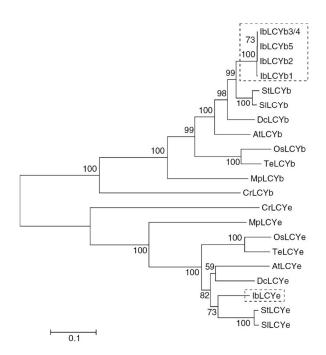


Figure 10. Phylogenetic tree of various lycopene β-cyclase (LCYb) and lycopene ε-cyclase (LCYe) proteins. GenBank accession numbers of the aligned cyclases include: Arabidopsis LCYb (AtLCYb), U50739; carrot LCYb (DcLCYb), DQ192190; wheat LCYb (TaLCYb), JN622196.1; rice LCYb (OsLCYb), XP_015627235; tomato LCYb (SlLCYb1), EF650013; potato LCYb (StLCYb), XP_006364433; liverwort LCYb (MpLCYb),AB794089; Chlamydomonas LCYb (CrLCYb), AY860818; Arabidopsis LCYe (AtLCYe), U50738.1

carrot LCYe (DcLCYe), DQ192192.1; wheat LCYe (TaLCYe), EU649787; rice LCYe (OsLCYe), XP_015622198; tomato LCYe (SILCYe), Y14387; potato LCYe (StLCYe), XP_006353544.1; liverwort LCYe (MpLCYe), AB794090; Chlamydomonas LCYe (CrLCYe), AY606130.

3.2.5 Conclusion

IbLCYb and *IbLCYe* showed significant homology and individually formed single clades that were positioned close to the corresponding proteins from potato

(*Solanum tuberosum*) and tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*), which, like sweetpotato, belong to the order Solanale.

3.3 FUNCTIONAL ANALYSIS OF ISOLATED *IbLCYb* AND *IbLCYe* CYCLASE GENES FROM SWEETPOTATO

3.3.1 HPLC analysis of Carotenoids formed in the Lycopene-producing *E.* colit

E. coli BL21 (DE3) that already harbored pACCRT-EIB plasmid (shown in figure 11) were transformed with the sweetpotato *IbLCYb* or *IbLCYe* genes.

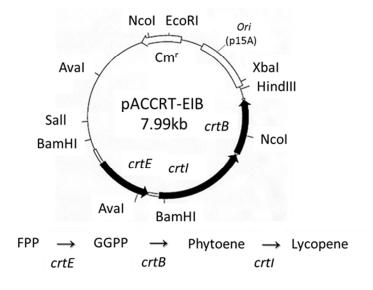


Figure. 11 pACCRT-EIB plasmid comprising gene cluster crtE,crtB and crtI from *Pantoea ananatis* for lycopene synthesis (Misawa et al., 1995; Misawa et al., 1990; Cunningham et al., 1993)

When plasmids, pETD-IbLCYb1, pETD-IbLCYb2, and pETD-IbLCYb4, were separately introduced into the lycopene-producing *E. coli* cells, β -carotene was detected in all the extracts (Figure 12 A–C). The enzymatic activity of *IbLCYb4* (*IbLCYb3*) in the *E. coli* cells was weak compared with that of *IbLCYb1* and *IbLCYb2*. In contrast, pETD-IbLCYb5 did not direct conversion of lycopene (Figure 12D). The introduction of plasmid pETD-IbLCYe led to efficient production of δ -carotene (Figure 11E), indicating that IbLCYe catalyzes the formation of δ -carotene by adding one monocyclic ϵ -ring to lycopene. Thus, this gene was shown to encode a lycopene ϵ -(mono) cyclase. MpLCYe derived from the liverwort *Marchantia polymorpha* was able to convert lycopene into ϵ -carotene with dicyclic

ε-rings by way of δ-carotene (Takemura et al., 2014), while IbLCYe appears to be strictly an ε-monocyclase (Figure 12).

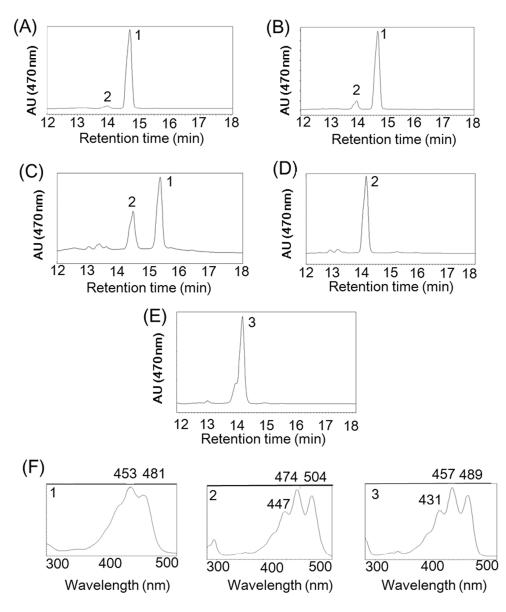


Figure 12. HPLC analysis of carotenoids formed in the lycopene-producing *E. coli* strain that had been transformed with the sweetpotato *IbLCYb* or IbLCYe genes.A TSKgel ODS-80Ts column (4.6×150 mm, 5 µm) was used in HPLC analysis.

(A–E) HPLC chromatograms of carotenoid extracts from *E. coli* that harbored pACCRT-EIB plus the respective sweetpotato gene: (A) pETD-*IbLCYb*1; (B) pETD-*IbLCYb*2; (C) pETD-*IbLCYb*4; (D) pETD-*IbLCYb*5; (E) pETD-IbLCYe. (F) Absorption spectra of individual peaks: 1, β-carotene; 2, lycopene; 3, δ-carotene.

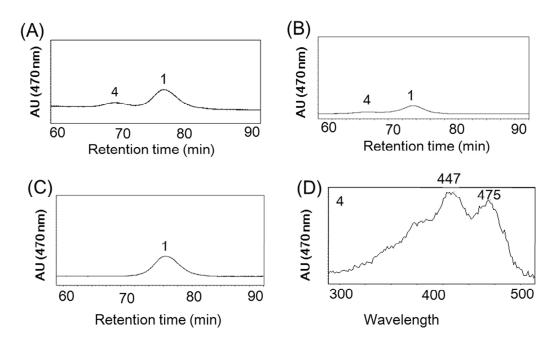


Figure 13. HPLC analysis of carotenoides formed in the lycopene-producing *E. coli* strain that had been transformed with both the sweetpotato *IbLCYb* and IbLCYe genes. A Nova-pak HR 6 μ C18 column (3.9×300 mm; Waters) was used in analysis.

(A–C) HPLC chromatograms of carotenoid extracts from *E. coli* that harbored pACCRT-EIB plus the respective sweetpotato genes: (A) pETD-*IbLCYb*1/IbLCYe; (B) pETD-*IbLCYb*2/IbLCYe; (C) pETDuet-*IbLCYb*4/IbLCYe; (D) Absorption spectra of individual peaks: 4, α -carotene; 1, β -carotene (Figure 12F).

The combined co-expression of *lbLCYb*1 or *lbLCYb*2 and lbLCYe (plasmid pETD-*lbLCYb*1/lbLCYe pETD-*lbLCYb*2/lbLCYe) in the lycopene-producing *E. coli* resulted in α -carotene formation, along with a considerable amount of β -carotene as shown in Figure 13 for HPLC analyses, whereas co-expression of *lbLCYb*4 and lbLCYe (plasmid pETD-*lbLCYb*4/lbLCYe) did not lead to such an activity and only β -carotene was detected.

3.3.2 Expression Analysis of the Isolated *IbLCYb* and *IbLCYe* Genes from sweetpotato cultivars WS and W71

Expression analysis of the carotene cyclase genes was performed in the leaves and tubers of the two sweetpotato cultivars (Figure 14). Both the *IbLCYb* and *IbLCYe* genes were highly expressed in the leaves of both cultivars, while in the tubers *IbLCYb* transcript levels were much higher than those of *IbLCYe*, providing an explanation why β -carotene and β -carotene-derived carotenoids occur abundantly in the tubers.

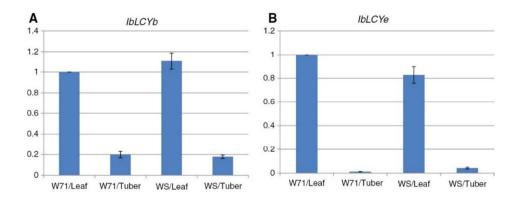


Figure 14. Transcript levels of the *IbLCYb* gene **(A)** and the *IbLCYe* gene **(B)** in the leaves and tubers of sweetpotato cultivars W71 and WS.

Primer Name	Gene	Direction	Sequence 5'-3'
IbLCYbRTF1	LCYb	Forward	AGCGTTGTGTTATCCCAATGG
IbLCYbRTR1		Reverse	TACCGCCAATTCCAACAACTC
IbLCYeRTF1	LCYe	Forward	TCATTCCATGCAGGCTAGTTACTG
IbLCYeRTR1		Reverse	CCCAACCTCATACTGCAACAATT
IbACT7F1	Actin	Forward	CCAAGAGCAGTGTTTCCCAGTAT
IbACT7R1		Reverse	TCTGTCCCATCCCAACCATAA

Table 4. Primers used in the real time PCR for expression analysis of lycopene cyclases in sweetpotato cultivars W71 and WS.

Basically, Lycopene β -cyclase (LCYb) individually can catalyse two β -rings at both ends of lycopene changing to form β -carotene. However, LCYe alone typically adds one ϵ -ring to the lycopene to make monocyclic δ -carotene which is then catalyzed by LCYb to α -carotene. Collective catalytic activity of lycopene β -cyclase (LCYb) and lycopene epsilon cyclase (LCYe) catalyzes the reaction which involves formation of one β and one ϵ -ring into lycopene to synthesize α -carotene. (Yamamizo et al., 2010). It has previously been reported that structurally LCYb and LCYe share high level of similarity ranging to 30% among there amino acid sequences (Hirshberg, 2001).These findings have suggested that both LCYb and LCYe share a common ancestor for their origin through gene duplication (Takemura et al., 2014). In tomato, two LCYb genes which separately exist in chloroplast and chromoplast have been reported that have 53% of identical amino acid sequences (Hirshberg, 2001; Bouvier et al., 1994). This corresponds to the present finding where sweetpotato also showed multiple copies of LCYb with significant amino acid similarities as depicted in sequence analyses. Whereas, in case of Arabidopsis, only one LCYb gene has been reported (Cunnigham et al., 1996; Ronen et al., 2000, Alguezar et al. 2009) which is not similar finding to the present one in sweetpotato for LCYb. Contrarily, only one copy of LCYe gene found in all higher plants by now and highly regulated processes such as the control of gene expression levels are the factors determining the concentration and composition of carotenoids inside plant tissues (Ronen et al., 1999; Takemura et al., 2014). These reports support the present results for sweetpotato which also showed only one gene for LCYe and carotenoid gene expression in contrast with the actual amounts of carotenoids found in sweetpotato carotenoid chemical analysis. The allelic variation in the genes controlling carotenoids biosynthesis pathway is the important factor that determines the accumulation of carotenoids in a plant (Clotault et al., 2010; Arizio et al., 2014). The amino acid sequences of all LCY β-type enzymes have a conserved motif called FLEET motif which is essential for establishing activity (Cunnigham et al., 1996; Moise et al., 2014). The present results for sweetpotato IbLCYb also showed conserved FLEET motif. As described previously, two ε - rings are commonly not found in majority of plants including algae (Goodwin, 1980) but lettuce is an exemption in which LCYe has been reported for making bicyclic ε - ε -carotene along with its hydroxylated derivative lactucaxanthin by cyclsing both Ψ -ends of lycopene (Phillip and Young, 1995; Takemura et al., 2014; Cunnigham and Gantt, 2001). However, sweetpotato ε- ring cyclase (IbLCYe) did not show any such activity instead it catalyzed the formation of mono-cyclic δ -carotene.

3.3.3 Conclusion

These results indicated that IbLCYb1, IbLCYb2, IbLCYb3, and IbLCYb4 possess lycopene β -cyclase activity, while IbLCYb5 was not functional. The non-functionality of IbLCYb5 might be due to the inner deletion of 15 bases making it a naturally existing mutant. Therefore, only the IbLCYb1-IbLCYb4 genes encode functional lycopene β -cyclase and IbLCYb1 and IbLCYb2 can synthesize α -carotene in the presence of IbLCYe.

3.4 ISOLATION OF β -CAROTENE HYDROXYLASE GENES FROM SWEETPOTATO

3.4.1 Isolation of Non-heme di-iron β -Carotene Hydroxylase genes (*IbBHY*) from WS and W71

By using the partial sequence data, expressed sequence tags and homology search, for sweetpotato β -carotene Hydroxylase genes (IbBHY), the gene spesific primers were desighned for 3'and 5'RACE to find the coding regions of sweetpotato BHY(IbBHY) genes. The primers used are shown in the table 3'and 5'RACE experiments were performed using SMART RACE cDNA Amplification Kit (Clontech). The first phase of amplification was performed by using GSP1 and GSP2 plus the universal primer provided in the kit for 3'RACE. For 5-'nested-RACE, NGSP1 with nested universal primer provided by the kit were used for 5'RACE. Similarly, NGSP2 with nested universal primer provided by the kit were used for 3'-nested RACE respectively. The products of each RACE were simultaneously cloned in pGEM®-T Easy Vector (Promega) and sequenced. After alignment and assembly of the 3' and 5'RACE products and the sequences of core fragment, the full length cDNA sequences of IbBHY were deduced. The full length cDNA sequences of IbBHY were isolated by using cDNA from both cultivars in separate reactions amplified by IbBHYF3 and IbBHYR3. The transit peptides were eliminated by amplifying the cDNA from both cultivars as template with the primers pair IbBHYF4 and IbBHYR3 by PCR at 95°C for 2 minutes, followed by 25 cycles of amplification at 95°C for 30seconds, 53°C for 30sec and 72°C for40 sec.

Primer Name	e Primer Sequence 5'-3'	Restriction enzymes used	Gene Cloning Experiment Type
IbBHYR1	GAGGAGAGCGATGGCAGGGACAGCG		GSP1 (5'-RACE)
IbBHYR2	AGCTCGAACGGTCCTTCTCTTGG		NGSP1
IbBHYF1	CCACAAAGGTCTCGTTCCTGGCCTC		GSP2 (3'-RACE)
IbBHYF2	CGGAGCTGGGCTTGGAATCACAG		NGSP2
IbBHYF3	AGGATCCATGGCGGTCGGAATTTCC	BamHI	pETDuet Cloning
IbBHYR3	AGTCGACTTATCGTCCCTTACTCTTG	SalI	pETDuet Cloning
IbBHYF4	CGGATCCATGGCCGAGGAGATTGAGAAG	BamHI	pETDuet Cloning

 Table 5. Primers used in cloning of *IbBHY* genes in sweetpotato cultivars W71 and WS. GSP, gene

 specific primer; NGSP, nested gene specific primer

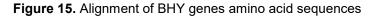
Two lycopene β -carotene hydroxylase gene (*IbBHY*) sequences were, isolated one from sweetpotato cultivar W71, named *IbBHY1* and another from WS named IbLBHY2. Both were found to encode the different deduced amino acid sequences. Isolated full lengths cDNA size for each was 918bp with amino acid sequence length of 305amino acid bases.

3.4.2 Sequence Analysis and Alignments of IbBHY Genes

The open reading frame of IbBHY1 from W71 showed 70% sequence identity with beta-hydroxylase 1 (Arabidopsis thaliana) BCH1 acession number NP 194300.1 and beta-carotene 3-hydroxylase, chloroplastic-like of Glycine max. accession number NP 001241433.1, 94% with beta-carotene hydroxylase (Ipomoea sp. Kenyan) accession number BAI47578.1, and beta-carotene hydroxylase [*lpomoea*] obscura] accession number BAI47579.1, There were 75%, 77%, 83%, 80%, identity with beta-carotene hydroxylase (Carica papaya) accession number ADZ14893.1, beta-carotene hydroxylase (Gentiana lutea) accession number BAE92729.1, beta-carotene hydroxylase (Coffea arabica)accession number ABA43903.1 and beta-carotene hydroxylase (Solanum lycopersicum) accession number NP 001234348.1 Japanese fruit beta-carotene hydroxylase (*Diospyros* kaki) accession number ACN86365.1 showed 74%, while, beta-carotene hydroxylase (Solanum lycopersicum), accession number CAB55626.2, beta-carotene hydroxylase 2 (Solanum tuberosum) accession number ADF28628.1 and beta-carotene hydroxylase BCH2 (Arabidopsis thaliana) accession number NP_200070.1 showed 76%, 77% and 69% sequence matches with *IbBH1* of W71.

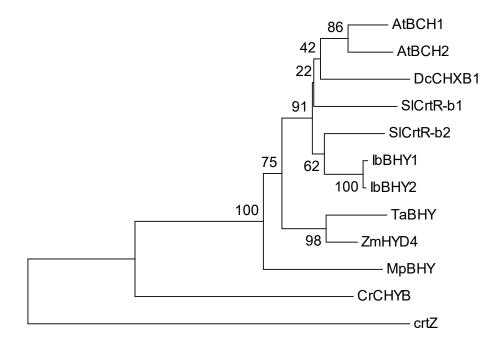
IbBHY2 from WS showed almost similar pattern of sequence homology with related plant species for β - ring hydroxylase. It showed 68% sequences identity with beta-hydroxylase BCH1 (Arabidopsis thaliana) accession number NP 194300.1, 95% with beta-carotene hydroxylase (*Ipomoea* sp. Kenyan) accession number BAI47578.1, 86% with beta-carotene hydroxylase 2, chloroplastic [Solanum tuberosum]accession number XP 006360197.1, 75% to that of beta-carotene hydroxylase [Carica papaya] accession number ADZ14893.1, 84% with beta-carotene hydroxylase [Coffea arabica] accession ABA43903.1, 81% with hydroxylase number beta-carotene [Solanum lycopersicum] accession numberNP 001234348.1, 74% with beta-carotene hydroxylase [Citrus sinensis] accession numberNP 001275830.1 83% with chloroplast beta-carotene hydroxylase [Cucurbita moschata] accession number AEK86567.1 and 76% with beta-carotene hydroxylase 2, chloroplastic-like [Nicotiana tabacum] accession number NP 001312763.1 respectively. The sequence alignment of BHY species is shown in figure 15. Another putative β-carotene hydroxylase gene had previously been isolated from sweetpotato cultivar Shinhwangmi with an accession number of HQ828094 (429 bp) andHQ828095 (370 bp) by Kim et al., (2012) however, the isolated sequence by them was partial and no functional analyses they could performed.

			10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80		100
IbBHY1	1			GQFSL								
Ibbhy2	1	MAVGISI	I-AASSRTVYN	GQFSL	V	RPATHCASPI	SLLFSPLSRR	FR-GLSSRRK	PSLTVCE	VLEDEKLESG		- 68
AtBCH1	1			-SFSS								
AtBCH2	1			SSFSA								
DcCHXB1 TaA1	1 1			GRNPF KNPLL								
Мрвну	1			VRSGRECGRDG								
crtZ	1				~			~ • •		~		- 1
			110	120	130	140	150	160	170			200
Ibbhy1	69			AS <mark>RLAE</mark> KLARK							FWARWAHRALV	
Ibbhy2	69	VEIRAE	EIEKAIEKQIS	ASRI <mark>AEKLA</mark> RK ALRI <mark>AE</mark> KLERK	RSER <mark>F</mark> TYLVA	AVMSSLGITS	SMAV <mark>L</mark> AVYYRF	AWQMEG-GEV			FWARWAHRALV	
AtBCH1		ERPESTS	SSTNAIDAEYL	ALRI <mark>AE</mark> KLERF	KSER <mark>S</mark> TYLIA	AM <mark>L</mark> SSFGITS	SMAV <mark>MAVYYRF</mark>	SWQMEG-GEI			FWARWAHRALW	
AtBCH2 DcCHXB1	65 68	NKPESTI	ISSSEILM	TSRLLKKAEKK	KSERFTYLIA	AVMSSEGITS	SMAIMAVYYRF	SWQMKG-GEV			FWARWAHRALV FWARWAH <mark>E</mark> ALV	
TaA1	60 67	-APEPVI	VSREEIEAGSC DSLEEEAASAA	SVRVEERRARK ARRV <mark>AE</mark> RKARK	OSERFIILVA OSERRTYLVA	AVMSSLGITS	SMAULAVIIRE SMATASVYYRE	AWOMEG-GET	PISEMIGIER	LSVGAAVGME	FWAQWAHKALV FWAQWAHKALV	H 165
Мрвну				VSKMOORLTKF							YWARWAHKALV	
crtz	1			~~	~			IWNA			VIAALAHKYIN	
							11114					-
							FILW	- u				-
			210	220 • • 1 • • • • 1 • • •	230	240	250	260	270			- 300
IbBHY1		ASLWHM	HESHHKPREGP	FELNDVFAITN	AVPAIALLSY	GFFHKGLVP(250 	260 - 1 1 VFGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV	GPIADVPYFR	R <mark>VAAAH</mark> QL <mark>HH</mark> I	1 D 267
IbBHY2	168	ASLWHMH ASLWHMH	HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP	FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN	IAVPAIALLSY IAVPAIALLSY	GFFHKGLVPC GFFHKGLVPC	250 	260 -11 VFGMAYMFVH VFGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR	RVAAAHQLHHJ RVAAAHQLHHJ	L D 267 D 267
IbBHY2 AtBCH1	168 163	ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWNMH	HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP	FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAIVN	IAVPAIALLSY IAVPAIALLSY IAGPAIGLLSY	GFFHKGLVPO GFFHKGLVPO GFFNKGLVPO	250 SLCFGAGLGIT GLCFGAGLGIT GLCFGAGLGIT	260 - I I VFGMAYMFVH VFGIAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH	l D 267 D 267 D 262
IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2	168 163 161	ASLWHMF ASLWHMF ASLWNMF DSLWNMF	HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGA	FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAIVN FELNDVFAITN	IAVPAIALLSY IAVPAIALLSY IAGPAIGLLSY IAVPAIGLLSY	GFFHKGLVPC GFFHKGLVPC GFFNKGLVPC GF <mark>L</mark> NKGLVPC	250 GLCFGAGLGIT GLCFGAGLGIT GLCFGAGLGIT GLCFGAGLGIT	260 VFGMAYMFVH VFGMAYMFVH VFGIAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH	l D 267 D 267 D 262 D 262 D 260
IbBHY2 AtBCH1	168 163 161 167	ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWNMH DSLWNMH ASLWHMH	HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGA HESHHKPREGA	FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAIVN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAIMN	IAVPAIALLSY IAVPAIALLSY IAGPAIGLLSY IAVPAIGLLYY IAVPAIALLAY	GFFHKGLVPC GFFHKGLVPC GFFNKGLVPC GFFNKGLVPC GFFHKGYPPC	250 SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT GLCFGAGLGIT GLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT	260 VFGMAYMFVH VFGMAYMFVH VFGIAYMFVH MFGMAYMFVH VFGIAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFAV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR GPIADVPYFR	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH	I D 267 D 267 D 262 D 262 D 260 IE 266
IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2 DcCHXB1	168 163 161 167	ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWNMH DSLWNMH ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWNMH	HESHHK PREGP HESHHK PREGP HESHHK PREGA HESHHK PREGA HESHHK PREGA HESHHR PREGP	FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN	IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALIAY IAVPATALIAY IAVPATALIAY IAVPAVSIMIY	GEFHKGLVPC GEFHKGLVPC GEFNKGLVPC GEFHKGVPC GEFHKGYFPC GEFHRGLIPC GEFLNRGLVPC	250 SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT	260 VEGMAYMFVH VEGMAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH LEGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHRRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLQ	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHKIHH KVAAAHQLHH	D 267 D 267 D 262 D 260 E 266 D 265 D 300
IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2 DcCHXB1 TaA1	168 163 161 167 166	ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWNMH DSLWNMH ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWNMH	HESHHK PREGP HESHHK PREGP HESHHK PREGA HESHHK PREGA HESHHK PREGA HESHHR PREGP	FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN	IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALIAY IAVPATALIAY IAVPATALIAY IAVPAVSIMIY	GEFHKGLVPC GEFHKGLVPC GEFNKGLVPC GEFHKGVPC GEFHKGYFPC GEFHRGLIPC GEFLNRGLVPC	250 SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT	260 VEGMAYMFVH VEGMAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH LEGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHRRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLQ	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHKIHH KVAAAHQLHH	D 267 D 267 D 262 D 260 E 266 D 265 D 300
IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2 DcCHXB1 TaA1 MpBHY	168 163 161 167 166 201	ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWNMH DSLWNMH ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWNMH	HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP	FEINDVFAITN FEINDVFAITN FEINDVFAITN FEINDVFAITN FEINDVFAITN FEINDVFAITN FENNDIFAITN FEVNDIFAITN	IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IACPATCLISY IAVPATCLISY IAVPATALIAY IAVPATALIAY IAVPAVSLITY IAVPAVSLITY	GEEHKGLVPC GEEHKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEEHKGYEPC GEEHKGLIPC GEENRGLVPC GE-STGMWP	250 SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT	260 VEGMAYMFVH VEGMAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH LEGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHRRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLQ	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHKIHH KVAAAHQLHH	D 267 D 267 D 262 D 260 E 266 D 265 D 300
IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2 DcCHXB1 TaA1 MpBHY	168 163 161 167 166 201	ASLWHMH ASLWHMH DSLWNMH ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWHMH ASLWHMH G <mark>WGW</mark> GWH	IESHHK PREGP IESHHK PREGP IESHHK PREGP IESHHK PREGA IESHHK PREGA IESHHR PREGP IESHHR PREGA 310	FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN FELNDVFAITN	IAVPATALIS IAVPATALIS IACPATCLIS IACPATCLIS IAVPATCLIS IAVPATALIA IACPATALIA IACPATALIA IALSTLITYT 330	GEEHKGLVPC GEEHKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGVPC GEEHKGYFPC GEEHKGLIPC GEELNRGLVPC GEELNRGLVPC GEELNRGLVPC GEELNRGLVPC	250 SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT	260 VEGMAYMFVH VEGMAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH LEGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHRRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLQ	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHKIHH KVAAAHQLHH	D 267 D 267 D 262 D 260 E 266 D 265 D 300
IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2 DcCHXB1 TaA1 MpBHY crtZ IbBHY1	168 163 161 167 166 201 31	ASLWHMI ASLWHMI DSLWNMI ASLWHMI ASLWHMI ASLWHMI GWGWGWGW GWGWGWGW KEN <mark>G</mark>	IESHH K PRE G P IESHH K PRE G P IESHH K PRE G P IESHH K PRE G A IESHH K PRE G A IESHH R PR G G P IESHH R PR G G P IESHH R PRE G P IESH R P IESH	FEIND V FAIT FEIND V FAIT FEIND V FAIT FEIND V FAIT FEIND V FAIT FEIND V FAIT FEND V FAIT FEVND V FAIT FEVND V AV VF	IAVPATALIS IAVPATALIS IAVPATALIS IAVPATGLIS IAVPATALIA IAVPATALIA IAVPAVSIALI IAVPAVSIALI IAVPAVSIALI IAVPAVSIALI IAUPAVSIALI IAUPAVSIALI IAUPAVSIALI IAUPAVSIALI IAUPAVSIALI IAUPAVSIALI	GEFHKGLVPC GEFHKGLVPC GEFHKGLVPC GEFHKGYFPC GEFHKGYFPC GEFHRGLIPC GEFHRGLIPC GEFHRGLIPC GEFHRGLIPC GEFHRGLIPC GEFHRGLIPC GEFNRGLIPC	250 LCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT GLCFGAGLGIT GLCFGAGLGIT GLCFGAGLGIT LCFGAGLGIT JQWIGACHT 350 1 305	260 VEGMAYMFVH VEGMAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH LEGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHRRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLQ	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHKIHH KVAAAHQLHH	D 267 D 267 D 262 D 260 E 266 D 265 D 300
IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2 DcCHXB1 TaA1 MpBHY crtZ IbBHY1 IbBHY1 IbBHY2	168 163 161 167 166 201 31 268 268	ASLWHM ASLWHM DSLWMM ASLWMM ASLWHM ASLWHM ASLWHM GWGWGW GWGW G GWGW G	HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGA HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP MISHHE	FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA S20 LEEVGCUNDLFATTA LEEVGCUNDLFATTA	IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPAVSIMIS IAUSILISY 330 VEVDERIKSK	GEEHKGLVPC GEEHKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEGEN	250 LCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT LQWIGACT 350 1 305 305	260 VEGMAYMFVH VEGMAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH LEGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHRRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLQ	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHKIHH KVAAAHQLHH	D 267 D 267 D 262 D 260 E 266 D 265 D 300
IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2 DcCHXB1 TaA1 MpBHY crtZ IbBHY1 IbBHY1 IbBHY2 AtBCH1	168 163 161 167 166 201 31 268 268 268 263	ASLWHM ASLWHM DSLWNM ASLWNM ASLWHM ASLWHM ASLWHM GWGWGW GWGWGW KENG C- C C- C C- C C- C C- C C- C C- C C-	HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP JUGLFLGPKE	FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FEVNDLYAVVF 320 LEEVGCLNDLF LEEVGCLNDLF LEEVGCLNDLF	IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPATALISY IAVPAVSIALISY IAVPAVSIALY 330 VEVDRRIKSK VEVNRRIKSK	GEEHKGLVPC GEEHKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEFHKGLVPC GEFHKGLVPC GEFHKGLVPC GEFHKGLVPC GEFHKGLVPC GEFKGLVC GEFKGLVPC GEFKGLVC GE	250 LCFCAGLGIT SLCFCAGLGIT SLCFCAGLGIT SLCFCAGLGIT SLCFCAGLGIT SLCFCAGLGIT SLCFCAGLGIT LQWIGACT 350 305 305 SSS 310	260 VEGMAYMFVH VEGMAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH LEGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHRRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLQ	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHKIHH KVAAAHQLHH	D 267 D 267 D 262 D 260 E 266 D 265 D 300
IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2 DcCHXB1 TaA1 MpBHY crtZ IbBHY1 IbBHY1 IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2	168 163 161 167 166 201 31 268 268 268 263 261	ASLWHME ASLWHME ASLWMME DSLWMME ASLWHME ASLWHME ASLWHME GWGWGWE GWGWGWE KENG	HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHRPRDGP HESHHRPRDGP HESHHRPRGGP HESHHRPRGP HESHKR	FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN S20 LEEVGGUNDLE LEEVGGNDLE LEEVGGNDLE LEEVGGNDLE	IAVPATALLSY IAVPATALLSY IAVPATALLSY IAVPATALLSY IAVPATALLSY IAVPATALLAY IAVPAVSLMLS IAUSTLLTY 330 VEVDERIKSY KELSERIKSY	GEEHKGLVPC GEEHKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC	250 SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SS0 1 305 SSS 310 TS- 303	260 VEGMAYMFVH VEGMAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH LEGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHRRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLQ	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHKIHH KVAAAHQLHH	D 267 D 267 D 262 D 260 E 266 D 265 D 300
IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2 DcCHXB1 TaA1 MpBHY crtZ IbBHY1 IbBHY1 IbBHY2 AtBCH1	168 163 161 167 166 201 31 268 268 268 263 261	ASLWHME ASLWHME SLWHME SLWNME ASLWHME ASLWHME ASLWHME ASLWHME GWGWGWGW KENG KENG KENG KENG	HESHHK PREGP HESHHK PREGP HESHHK PREGP HESHHK PREGP HESHHR PREGP HESHKR PREGP HESKR PREGP	FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA FELNDVFATTA S20 LEEVGCLNDLF LEEVGCLNDLF LEEVGCLNDLF	IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLS IAVPATALS ILLIVI 330 VEVDERIKSK VEVDERIKSK KEISERIKS KEISERIKS	GEEHKGLVPC GEEHKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEEHKGLPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEGEN	250 SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT 350 1 	260 VEGMAYMFVH VEGMAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH LEGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHRRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLQ	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHKIHH KVAAAHQLHH	D 267 D 267 D 262 D 260 E 266 D 265 D 300
IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2 DcCHXB1 TaA1 MpBHY crtZ IbBHY1 IbBHY1 IbBHY2 AtBCH1 AtBCH2 DcCHXB1	168 163 161 167 201 31 268 268 263 263 261 267	ASLWHME ASLWHME SLWHME SLWNME ASLWHME ASLWHME ASLWHME ASLWHME GWGWGWGW KENG	HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHKPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRPREGP HESHHRGPKE VPYGLFLGPKE VPYGLFLGPKE	FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN FELNDVFATTN 320 LEEVGGLNDLE LEEVGGLNDLE LEEVGGLNDLE LEEVGGLNDLE LEEVGGLNDLE VEEVGGREELE	IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLS IAVPATALLA IAVPAVSLMJ PALSTLLIVI 330 VEVDRRIKSK VEVDRRIKSK KEISRRIKSY KEISRRIKS LEINRRIKSS QELARINRTS	GEEHKGLVPC GEEHKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEENKGLVPC GEEHKGLPC GEEHKGLVPC GEEHKGLVPC GEEHKGLVPC GEEHKGLVPC GEGEGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGG	250 SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT SLCFGAGLGIT 350 1 	260 VEGMAYMFVH VEGMAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH VEGIAYMFVH LEGMAYMFVH	DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHKRFPV DGLVHRRFPV	GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLR GPIANVPYLR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYFR GPIADVPYLQ	RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH KVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHQLHH RVAAAHKIHH KVAAAHQLHH	D 267 D 267 D 262 D 260 E 266 D 265 D 300



Based on the conservation level, sequence residues are indicated in black and grey. The bases underlined with the red and blue lines represent transmembrane helices and Motif 1 respectively. AtBCH1, *Arabidopsis thaliana* (accession number AY113923; AtBCH1, *Arabidopsis thaliana* (accession number AY113923; AtBCH1, *Arabidopsis thaliana* (accession number AY117225) ; DcCHXB1, *Daucus Carota* (accession number DQ192193) ; TaA1, *Triticum aestivum* (Accession number JX_171670); MpBHY, *Marchantia polymorpha* (accession number AB981062); crtZ, *Pantoea ananatis* (accession number D90087).

3.4.3 Phylogenetic Analysis of IbBHY Proteins from Plants species



0.050

Figure 16. Neighbor joining tree for phylogenetic relationship among β-Carotene hydroxylases. Numbers attached to branches indicate bootstrap values supporting the final tree. Accession numbers include: Arabidopsis BCH1 (AtBCH1), AY113923; Arabidopsis BCH2 (AtBCH2), AY117225; Carrot CHXB1 (Dc CHXB1), DQ192193; Tomato CrtR-b1 (SICrtR-b1), Y14809; Tomato CrtR-b2 (SICrtR-b2), Y14810; Wheat BHY/TaBHY (TaHYD-A1), JX_171670; Maize HYD4 (ZmHYD4) AY844956; Liverwort BHY (MpBHY), AB981062; Chlamydomonas HYB (CrCHYB) and Pantoea ananatis crtZ (crtZ), D90087.

3.4.4 Conclusion

Both *IbBHY1* and *IbBHY2* closely brancjed with tomato β - Carotene hydroxylases at one end and with wheat and maize at the other. These results show that the sweetpotato occupies evolutionary space after bacteria, algae, lower vascular plants in evolutionary hierarchy after monocots.

3.5 FUNCTIONAL ANALYSIS OF ISOLATED *IbBHY* GENES FROM WS AND W71 CULTIVARS OF SWEETPOTATO

3.5.1 HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids formed in the β-Carotene producing *E. coli* Transformed with the Sweetpotato IbBHY Genes

In order to identify the β - Carotene hydroxylase genes isolated from sweetpotato *E. coli* expression system was used (Misawa et al., 1995).

The coding regions of sweetpotato IbBHY1 and IbBHY2 were amplified using cDNA from both of cultivars in separate PCR reactions and cloned into pETDuet vecto (Merck Millipore, Darmstadt, Germany). The plasmid constructs where were tagged as pETDuet-IbBHY1 and pETDuet-IbBHY2. When pET-IbBHY1 construct without transit peptide was used to transform β - carotene producing *E. coli*, zeaxanthin [(3*R*, 3'*R*)- β , β -carotene-

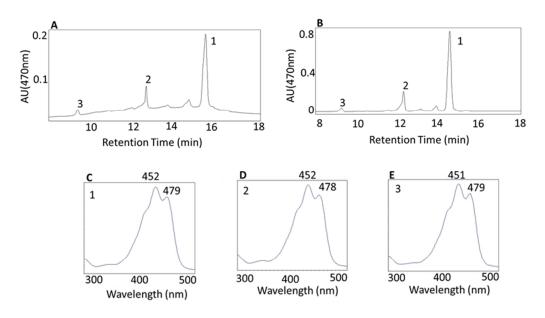


Figure 17. HPLC analyses of the carotenoids formed from β - Carotene. *E. coli* that produce β -Carotene accumulating bacteria. **A**, pACHP-Beta plus pET-IbBHY1; **B**, pACHP-Beta plus pET-IbBHY2; **C-E** absorption spectra of individual peaks; **1**, β - Carotene; **2**, β - Cryptoxanthin and **3**, zeaxanthin.

3,3'-diol] along with monohydroxylated carotenoid β -cryptoxanthin [(3*R*)- β , β -caroten-3-ol] were detected by HPLC as shown in the figure 17.

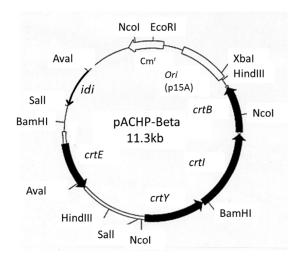


Figure 18. pACHP-Beta comprise the gene cluster *crtE, crtB, crtI and crtY* from *Pantoea ananatis* along with the *Haematococcus pluvialis idi* gene for β -carotene synthesis

pACHP-Beta (Figure 18) comprise a gene cluster *crtE, crtB, crtI, and crtY* along with an *idi* gene from *Haematococcus pluvialis* so they are efficient in synthesizing β - Carotene which can be used as substrate for β - Carotene hydroxylase enzymes genes isolated from a given species (Takemura et al., 2015).

As reported earlier, higher plants have two or more than two *BHY* genes. For example Arabidopsis (Sun et al., 1996; Tian and DellaPenna 2001; Takemura et al., 2015), citrus (Kim et al., 2001; Takemura et al., 2015), and tomato (Galpaz et al. 2006; Takemura et al., 2015) have been reported to possess two *BHY* genes. Similarly, six different *BHY* paralogs have recently been identified in maize (Vallabhaneni et al. 2009; Takemura et al., 2015). β -carotene hydroxylase was noticeably encoded by two of them, other two were pseudogenes, and the remaining two were found to be functionally unclear (Takemura et al., 2015; Vallabhaneni et al., 2009). On contrary, only one *BHY* gene was recently reported from a liverwort M. polymorpha genome (Takemura et al., 2015). More recently, only one *BHY* gene has been isolated from citrus fruits (Satsuma mandarin) and reported for its functional identification. It showed about 70 % identities to Arabidopsis BCH1 and BCH2 on its amino acid base sequences. Experiments on individual activity of CitHYb, did not show any carotene hydroxylation activity in the

β-carotene-accumulating *E. coli* BL21 (DE3) cells, or α-carotene- and β-carotene-producing *E. coli* BL21 (DE3) cells (Ma et al., 2016). Such type of results for *BHY* function in *Marcantia polymorpha* and citrus are similar to those observed in the present study on sweetpotato *IbBHY*. Carotenoid composition in flowering plants, however differ significantly in leaves, flowers and fruits since, the carotenoid biosynthesis genes are variably regulated in a tissue- in a development-specific way (Ma et al., 2016; Takemura et al., 2015; Galpaz et al. 2006; Li et al., 2010). However, the individual activity of all β- Carotene hydroxylases is to catalyze the hydroxylation of the β-ring of carotene to synthesise zeaxanthin through β- Cryptoxanthin. In this study the full length cDNA sequences of *IbBHY* were first time isolated along with their functional identification.

3.5.2 Conclusion

The present results revealed that *IbBHY* genes possess β -ring hydroxylation activity for β -carotene to produce zeaxanthin via β -cryptoxanthin. The results presented in this study will provide support in further interpretations of the mechanism of carotenoid biosynthesis in sweetpotato. Especially, it will provide insight for new procedures to improve carotenoid composition of sweetpotato.

3.6 ISOLATION OF CYTOCHROME P450 HYDROXYLASE GENES FROM SWEETPOTATO

3.6.1 Isolation of Cytochrome P450 Hydroxylase Genes *IbCYP97A* and *IbCYP97B* from WS and W71 Cultivars

To isolate full length cDNA sequences of sweetpotato cytochrome P450 Hydroxylase genes *IbCYP97A* and *IbCYP97B* homology search was made for *Ipomoea* genome. For this purpose sweetpotato wild relative and the most probable progenitor of sweetpotato (*Ipomoea batatas* L.) was searched to find the EST and the homologous sequences to the already known *CYP97A* and *CYP97B* genes. So, *Ipomoea trifida* and closely related species were aligned and worked out for primer designing for full length cDNA isolation of *IbCYP97A* and *IbCYP97B*. The primers thus synthesized and used are shown in table 6.

Primer Name Primer Sequence 5'-3'	Restriction enzymes used	Gene Cloning Experiment Type
IbCYP97AF1 AGGATCCATGGCAGCTAGCTCCGTT	BamHI	pRSF Cloning
IbCYP97AR1 TGCGGCCGCTACACTGAAGATCTCGC	NotI	pRSF Cloning
IbCYP97AF2 AGATTGACATTTGGCCCC		Sequencing primer
IbCYP97AR2 GGCTGTGGATATAGTCGC		Sequencing primer
IbCYP97BF1 GCCCGGGATGAATTTGTTAGACAATG	SmaI	pRSF Cloning
IbCYP97BR3 GGGTACCTCAGCACATATCCAACCTC	KpnI	pRSF Cloning

 Table 6. Primers used for full length cDNA isolation of *IbCYP97A* and IbCYP97B genes in sweetpotato cultivars W71 and WS.

Coding region of each gene were amplifies by PCR using pair of primers cloned in cloning vectors and sequenced.

3.6.2 Sequence Analysis and Alignment of IbCYP97A and IbCYP97B Genes

Using the sweetpotato cDNA as template from two cultivars, the coding regions were amplified by PCR and subsequently cloned into cloning (pBluescriptII K⁺) and expression (pRSF) vectors. Two *IbCYP97A* full lenghth sequences from W71, named *IbCYP97A1* and *IbCYP97A2* were isolated. Four, *IbCYP97A* full length cDNA suquences were isolated from WS and named *IbCYP97A3*, *4*, *5*, *6*.

Whereas, only one *IbCYP97B* full length cDNA sequence each from W71 and WS were isolated and named as *IbCYP97B1* and *IbCYP97B2* respectively. The isolated full length sequences were cloned in pRSF expression vector. The plasmid constructs were tagged as, pRSF-IbCYP97A1, pRSF-IbCYP972, pRSF-IbCYP97A3, pRSF-IbCYP97A4, pRSF-IbCYP97A5, pRSF-IbCYP97A6, pRSF-IbCYP97B1 and pRSF-IbCYP97B2 and sequenced respectively before *E. coli* transformation and functional complementation experiments.

Isolated IbCYP97A1, IbCYP97A2, IbCYP97A3, IbCYP97A4, IbCYP97A5 and IbCYP97A6 were 1878bp long with significant difference among all from one another. The open reading frames encoded amino acid with each 625bp size. On the other hand each full length sequence isolated for *IbBHY1* and *IbBHY2* was found to be 1563bp with encoded amino acid size of 520bp. Blast search was performed for detailed sequence homology analyses. From Blast search, IbCYP97A1 was found to be 79% identical with cytochrome P450, family 97, subfamily A, polypeptide 3 of Arabidopsis thaliana AtCYP97A3 accession number, NP 564384.1. 82% identity with cytochrome P450-type monooxygenase 97A29 of Solanum lycopersicum accession number NP_001234049.1, 82% with P450 carotenoid beta-ring hydroxylase (Lycium barbarum) accession number AIX87503.1. P450 carotenoid beta-ring hydroxylase Lycium ruthenicum accession number AIX87527.1 showed 80% ,homology , Cytochrome P450 97B2 from Cajanus cajan ccession number KYP47625.1, 77% a and chloroplast cytochrome P450 monooxygenase 97A3 from Daucus carota accession number AFU10536.1 showed 77% sequence homology with IbCYP97A1 isolated from W71 cultivar of sweetpotato.

For IbCYP97A2 and with mostly similar pattern of sequence similarities showed significant sequence identities with minor variations to that of *IbCYP97A1*. For example, Cytochrome P450-type monooxygenase 97A29 *Solanum lycopersicum* accession number NP_001234049.1,80% ,P450 carotenoid beta-ring hydroxylase accession number AIX87503.1from *Lycium barbarum* , P450 carotenoid beta-ring hydroxylase accession number AIX87503.1from *Lycium barbarum* , P450 carotenoid beta-ring hydroxylase accession number AIX87527.1 from *Lycium ruthenicum* all showed 80% sequence homology while, cytochrome P450-type monooxygenase 97A3 *Bixa orellana* AMJ39485.1, showed 75% , cytochrome P450, family 97A3,

subfamily A, polypeptide 3 *Arabidopsis thaliana* accession number NP_564384.1 showed 79% sequence homology with the IbCYP97A2 isolated from W71 cultivar of sweetpotato.

Cytochrome P450-type monooxygenase 97A29 (*Solanum lycopersicum*) accession number NP_001234049.1 showed 81% resemblance with IbCYP97A3. And though, *Lycium barbarum*, P450 carotenoid beta-ring hydroxylase accession number AIX87527.1 from *Lycium ruthenicum* showed 80% sequence homology same way as to that of IbCYP97A2 but, it differed in case of cytochrome P450-type monooxygenase 97A3 *Bixa orellana* (accession number AMJ39485.1) which showed 76% sequence similarity with IbCYP97A3. For IbCYP97A4 P450-type monooxygenase 97A29 from *Solanum lycopersicum*, P450 carotenoid beta-ring hydroxylases from *Lycium barbarum*, and *Lycium ruthenicum* showed same similarity percentage of 80% which was similar to other IbCYP97A4 (*Salvia miltiorrhiza*) and75% identity with cytochrome P450-type monooxygenase 97A3 (*Bixa orellana*) accession number AMJ39485.1.

Cytochrome P450 97B2 (*Cajanus cajan*) accession number KYP47625.1 was 81% identical to IbCYP97A4. CYP97 family CYP97A3, subfamily A, polypeptide 3 *Arabidopsis thaliana* accession number NP_564384.1 was found to be 79% similar to IbCYP97A5. Chloroplast cytochrome P450 monooxygenase 97A3 from *Daucus carota* accession number AFU10536.1 was 77% similar with IbCYP97A5. but, it differed in case of cytochrome P450-type monooxygenase 97A3 *Bixa orellana* (accession number AMJ39485.1) which showed 75% sequence similarity with IbCYP97A3.

IbCYP97A5 and IbCYP97A6 were almost same in homology with significant similarity with other IbCYP97A amino acid sequences. IbCYP97B1 and IbCYP97B2 show similar sequences matches with minor variations same way as found in IbCYP97A sequences.

CYP97B2, chloroplastic from Glycine max accession number NP_001235534.1was 86% similar with both IbCYP97B1 IbCYP97B2. Similarly, CYP97B3 family 97, subfamily B, polypeptide 3 *Arabidopsis thaliana* accession number NP_193247.2 showed 83% sequence match with IbCYP97B1 but 82%

64

similarity in case of IbCYP97B2. *Cajanus cajan* accession number, KYP52637.1; CYP 97B2, chloroplastic showed 85% sequence matches with both IbCYP97B1 and IbCYP97B2. Cytochrome P450 97B2, chloroplastic *Ananas comosus* accession number OAY64819.1 was observed to be 83% identical with both IbCYP97B1 and IbCYP97B2.

IDCYP97A3 1 MAASSVGMLQFP2CSLHSKSPSST IDCYP97A4 1 MAASSVGMLQFP2CSLHSKSPSST IDCYP97A5 1 MAASSVGMLQFP2CSLHSKSPSST IDCYP97A6 1 MAASSVGMLQFP2CSLHSKSPSST IDCYP97B1 1	AFRSFTFSLPRLTGNSGRYSVIRCSSSSGRKP-DDFSGDREVNTVER FAFRSFTFSLPRLTGNSGRYSVIRCSSSSGRKP-DEYSADKEVKTVER TFRSTFSLPRLTGNSGRYSVIRCSSSSGRKP-DEYSADKEVKTVER	80 90 100 110 120 LLEEKRR ELSIR ASGETYVERGGIPSILVDGISRLGVPKGFLEFISK 119 LEEKRR ELSIR ASGETYVERGFIPSILVDGISRLGVPKGFLEFISK 119 LEEKRR SELSAR ASGETYVERGYVERGFIPSILVDGISRLGVPKGFLEFISK 119 LEEKRR ELSIR ASGETYVERGFIPSILVDGISRLGVPKGFLEFISK 119 LEEKRR SELSAR ASGETYVERGFIPSILVDGISRLGVPKGFLEFISK 119 LEEKRR SELSAR ASGETYVERGFIPSILVDGISRLGVPKGFLEFISK 119 LEEKRR SELSAR ASGETYVERGFIPSILVDGISRLGVPKGFLEFISK 119 LEEKRR SELSAR ASGETYVERGISK 120 DEKRFFIPSIR 110 120 LEEKRR SELSAR ASGETYVERGISK 120 DEKRFFIPSICK 110 LINASNILINILSS 120
130 140 IbcYP97A1 120 IGTEGYP0TPERKGIKAIRSE IbcYP97A2 120 IGSEAYPQIPERKGIKAIRSE IbcYP97A1 120 IGSEAYPQIPERKGIKAIRSE IbcYP97A4 120 IGSEAYPQIPERKGIKAIRSE IbcYP97A5 120 IGSEGYPQIPERKGIKAIRSE IbcYP97A5 120 IDGSEGYPQIPERKGIKAIRSE IbcYP97A5 120 IGSEAYPQIPERKGIKAIRSE IbcYP97A5 120 IGSEGYPQIPERKGIKAIRSE IbcYP97A5 120 IGSEAYPQIPERKGIKAIRSE IbcYP97A5 130 IFGR	150 160 170 180 190 1 0 1 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 1	200 210 220 230 240 KC LAEIU F MGKGLIPALC STUFTERATUST HERMAN STUFTER ST
250 260	270 280 290 300 310	
370 380 IbcYP97A1 350 E - BLOFIE EYNEC FS II FL IbcYP97A2 350 E - BLOFIE YNNEC FS II FL IbcYP97A3 350 E - BLOFIE YNNEC FS II FL IbcYP97A4 350 E - BLOFIE YNNEC FS II FL IbcYP97A4 350 E - BLOFIE YNNEC FS II FL IbcYP97A5 350 E - BLOFIE YNNEC FS II FL IbcYP97A5 350 E - BLOFIE YNNEC FS II FL IbcYP97A5 350 E - BLOFIE YNNEC FS II FL IbcYP97A5 350 E - BLOFIE YNNEC FS II FL IbcYP97B1 251 A WELC R YNNLKAS II FL FL AtcYP97A3 333 E - BLOFIE YNNEFOES II FL DcCHK2 29 To GRISEE YNNEFOES II FL AtcYP97B3 313 T WELC RYNLKAS II FL AtcYP97B3 313 T WELC RYNLE RAS II FL	390 400 410 420 430 1 AS = CLUSSKOLRDDLMYNLLAGHEY: AAVLTWIN FYLLE & SEVIA 1 AS SECTON SSKOLRDDLMYNLLAGHEY: AAVLTWIN FYLLE & SEVIA 1 AS = CLUSSKOLRDDLMYNLLAGHEY: AAVLTWIN FYLL & SEVIA	RECORDS VIGENTED KKIKNTEN INSIGL POPPILIRASIA RECORDS VIGENTED KKIKNTEN INSIGL POPPILIRASI RECORDS VIGENTES KKIENTEN VISION POPPILIRASI RECORDS VIGENTED KKIKNTEN INSIGL POPPILIRASI RECORDS VIGENTED KKIKNTEN INSIGN POPPILIRASI RECORDS VIGENTED KKIKNTEN INSIGL POPPILIRASI RECORDS VIGENTED KKIKNTEN INSIGN POPPILIKASI RECORDS VIGENTED KKI
490 500 IbCYP97A1 467 FDDIIG	510 520 530 540 550 FISWMNLHRSENHWODDAREN PERWSID 1 1 1 FISWMNLHRSENHWODAREN PERWSID 1 1 1 FISWMNLHRSENHWOREN PERWSID 1 1	560 570 580 590 600 EMNETRONE SYLPFGGERREG GINEATES VVANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE SYLPFGGERREG GINEATES VVANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE SYLPFGGERREG GINEATES VVANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE SYLPFGGERREG GINEATES VVANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE SYLPFGGERREG GINEATES VVANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE SYLPFGGERREG GINEATES VVANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE SYLPFGGERREG GINEATES VVANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE SYLPFGGERREG GINEATES VVANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE SYLPFGGERREG GINEATES VVANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE SYLPFGGERREG GINEATES VVANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE FILE VLANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE SYLPFGGERREG GINEATES VVANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE FILE VLANILRES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE FILE FILAS FILANDES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE FILE FILAI 560 ENDITRONE FILE FILAS FILANDES FILANDES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE FILE FILAI 560 ENDITRONE FILE FILAS FILANDES FILANDES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE FILAI 560 ENDITRONE FILE FILAS FILANDES FILANDES FILAI 560 ENDITRONE FILAI 560 ENDITRONE FILE FILAS FILANDES FILANDE
610 620	630 640 650 660 FIT PPVVPTLENPLLEVGSSADVSDITDKKGEVSAARSSV 625 FIT PPVVPTLENPLLEVGSSADVSDITDKKGEVSAARSSV 625 FIT PPVVPTLENPLLEVGSSADVSDITDKKGEVSAARSSV 625 FIT PPVVPTLENPLEVGSSADVSDITDKKGEVSAARSSV 520 FIT FIT FIT FIT FIT FIT FIT FIT FIT SAVSIST 548 FIT SAVSIST 580	

Figure 19. Amino acid sequences alignment of CYP97A and CYP97B genes.

Accession number used are: Arabidosis CYP97A3 (AtCYP97A3), NM_102914; Carrot CHXE (DcCHXE), DQ192196 and Arabidosis CYP97B3 (AtCYP97B3), NM_117600. The predicted oxygen binding pockets and heme- binding domain are underlined with blue and red lines respectively.

3.6.3 Phylogenetic Analysis of CYP97A and CYP97B Proteins from Plants Species

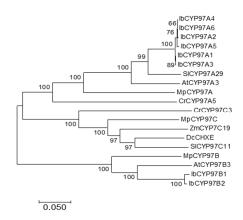


Figure 20. Neighbor joining tree for phylogenetic relationship among CYP97A and CYP9 B carotene hydroxylases. Numbers attached to branches indicate bootstrap values supporting the final tree. Accession numbers include: Tomato CYP97A29 (SICYP97A29), EU849605; Arabidopsis CYP97A3 (AtCYP97A3), NM_102914; Liverwort CYP97A (MpCYP97A), AB981063; Chlamydomonas CYP97A5 (CrCYP97A5), EF587911; Chlamydomonas CYP97C3 (CrCYP97A5), EF587910; Liverwort CYP97A (MpCYP97A), AB981065; Maize CYP97C19 (ZmCYP9719), GU130217; Carrot CHXE (DcCHXE), DQ192196; Tomato CYP97C11 (SICYP97B3), NM_117600

3.6.4 Conclusion

Both *IbCYP97A* and *IbCYP97B* isolated from Sweetpotato showed significant homology with known homologues and individually formed single clades that were positioned close to the corresponding proteins from tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*), *Arabidopsis thaliana* and *Marcantia polymorpha* which suggested that these genes from these species might have a single closely related ancestor through which they evolved.

3.7 FUNCTIONAL ANALYSIS OF ISOLATED P450 HYDROXYLASE GENES *IbCYP97A* AND *IbCYP97B* FROM SWEETPOTATO

3.7.1 HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids formed in the β-Carotene producing *E. coli* Transformed with the Sweetpotato P450 Hydroxylase *IbCYP97A* and *IbCYP97B* Genes

The coding regions of sweetpotato *lbCY97A* and *lbCYP97B* were cloned intopRSF vector The constructs were used to check the activity of the isolated*lbCYP97A* and *lbCYP97B* genes The plasmid constructs where used to transformβ- Carotene producing *E. coli* and individual trans-formants were tagged aspACHP-Beta-pRSF-lbCYP97A1,pACHP-Beta-pRSF-lbCYP97A3pACHP-Beta-pRSF-lbCYP97A5pACHP-Beta-pRSF-lbCYP97B1 and pACHP-Beta-pRSF-lbCYP97B2

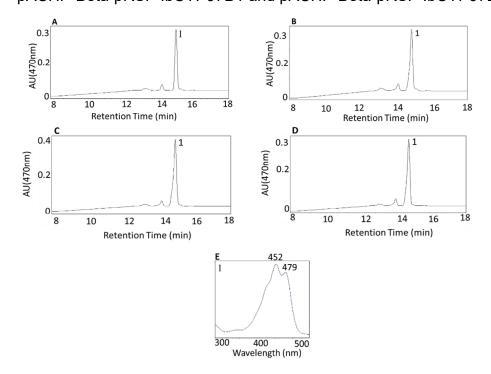


Figure 21a. HPLC analysis of carotenoids formed in the β- Carotene producing *E. coli* strain that had been transformed with the sweetpotato IbCYP97A genes. **A**, pACHP-Beta- pRSF-IbCYP97A1; **B**, pACHP-Beta- pRSF-IbCYP97A2; **C** pACHP-Beta- pRSF-IbCYP97A3; **D**, pACHP-Beta-

pRSF-IbCYP97A4. Whereas, **E** represents the absorption spectrum of individual peak for β -Carotene.

When plasmid constructs of pACHP-Beta-pRSF-IbCYP97A1 to pACHP-Beta-pRSF-IbCYP97A6 were used to transform β - carotene producing *E. coli*, no activity was detected. β -Carotene was normally produced with no other carotenoids among all of the transformed *E. coli* when detected by HPLC as shown in figure 21a and 21b.

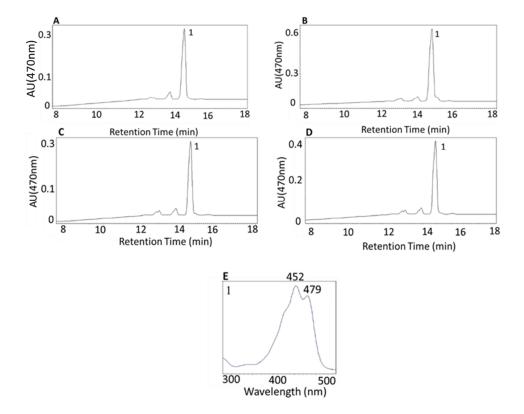


Figure 21b HPLC analysis of carotenoids formed in the β- Carotene producing *E. coli* strain that had been transformed with the sweetpotato IbCYP97A and IbCYP97B genes. **A**, pACHP-Beta-pRSF-IbCYP97A5; **B**, pACHP-Beta- pRSF-IbCYP97A6; **C** pACHP-Beta- pRSF-IbCYP97B1; **D**, pACHP-Beta- pRSF-IbCYP97B2. Whereas, **E** represents the absorption spectrum of individual peak for β- Carotene.

Similarly, for pACHP-Beta-pRSF-IbCYP97B1 to pACHP-Beta-pRSF-IbCYP97B2-Constructs, were used to transform β - carotene producing *E. col*i, no activity was detected. β -Carotene was normally produced with no other carotenoids among all of the transformed *E. coli* when detected by HPLC as shown in the figure 21b.

3.7.2 HPLC Analysis of Carotenoids-formed in the α-Carotene producing *E. coli* Transformed with the Sweetpotato P450 Hydroxylase *IbCYP97A* or *IbCYP97B* Genes

In another experiment, IbCY97A and IbCYP97B were fed separately to α-Carotene producing *E. coli* that have two plasmids one for lycopene which is pACCRT-EIB and another from *Marchantia polymorpha* (Takemura et al., 2015).

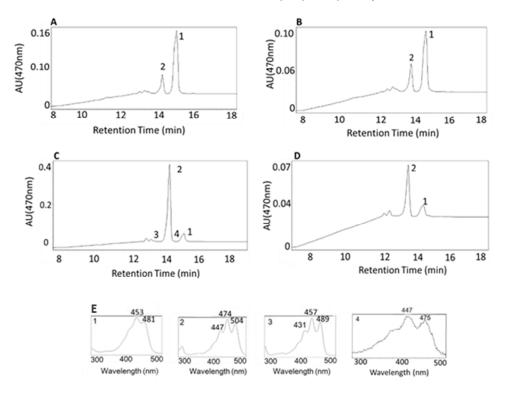


Figure 22. HPLC analysis of carotenoids formed in α- Carotene producing *E. coli* strain that had been transformed with the sweetpotato IbCYP97A genes. (Results for IbCYP97A4 and 5 not shown). A-D, shows the plasmid construct for pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe -pRSF-IbCYP97A1; B, pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe-pRSF-IbCYP97A2; pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe -pRSF-IbCYP97A3;D, pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe pRSF-IbCYP97A6. Whereas, E represents the absorption spectrum of individual peak for1, β- Carotene. 2, lycopene; 3, δ- Carotene and 4, α-Carotene.

The first set of experiments used the plasmid constructs which were made and tagged as pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe -pRSF-IbCYP97A1 to pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe-pRSF-IbCYP97A6.

Similarly, for IbCYP97B case, pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe-pRSF-IbCYP97B1 and pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe -pRSF-IbCYP97B2 constructs were used to transform α - carotene producing *E. coli*, *E. coli* were cultured with addition of IPTG for carotenoid extraction and analyses by HPLC. However, the HPLC results showed that the constructs had no enzymatic activity for α - carotene as a substrate (Figure 23 A-B).

In a separate experiment, in order to check the effect of IPTG on the growth and activity, of *E. coli* transformed without IPTG along with the control which had the IPTG added into the. E. coli were cultured and carotenoids extracted. It was Ε. revealed that in coli transformed with pACCRTEIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe-pRSF-IbCYP97A(s) without IPTG had showed changed in the carotenoid composition. The extracted carotenoids were analysed by HPLC. The results indicated peaks for β -Carotene, lycopene, δ - Carotene and α - Carotene (Figure 22). From these results, it was assumed that IbCYP97A(s) interpreted the enzymatic activity of lycopene cyclases. Similar results were obtained in case of IbCYP97B(s) constructs when used to transformα- Carotene producing bacteria (Figure 23C-D). Due to such an interpretation, the extracts showed variable carotenoids composition, instead of a single carotenoid. These results are different from those previously reported for Arabidopsis CYP97A3 (Kim and DellaPenna, 2006), tomato, CYP97A29 (Stigliani et al., 2011) and rice CYP97A4 (Lv et al., 2012). In higher plants, CYP97A and CYP97C synthesize carotenoids whereas the function of CYP97B has not yet been elucidated completely except for only two reports. In the one report it was described that Arabidopsis CYP97B3 showed the activity of β-carotenoid hydroxylase (Takemura et al., 2015; Kim et al., 2010). While, in the other one, β -carotenoid hydroxylation activity along with possible ε-carotenoid hydroxylation activity in Porphyra PuCHY₁ was described (Yang et al., 2014). Takemura et al., (2015) isolated liverwort MpCYP97A and MpCYP97B followed by their functional analysis for hydroxylating activity for β - and α -carotene, but their results showed no individual activity by both genes they investigated. CYP97B carotene hydroxylase is also present in higher plants however, their biosynthetic role is not clear (Kim et al., 2009; Yang et al., 2014). CYP97A has been found to preferably catalyse hydroxylation of β -rings

(Moise et al., 2014). CYP97C together with the CYP97A β -hydroxylases the formation of lutein but preferentially hydroxylating the ϵ -ring of substrates of whose β -ring have already been hydroxylated (Quinlan et al., 2007; Kim and DellaPenna, 2006). It has also been identified that different carotenoid hydroxylases function in coordination to synthesize xanthphylls (Quinlan et al., 2012; Takemura et al., 2015; Moise et al., 2014).

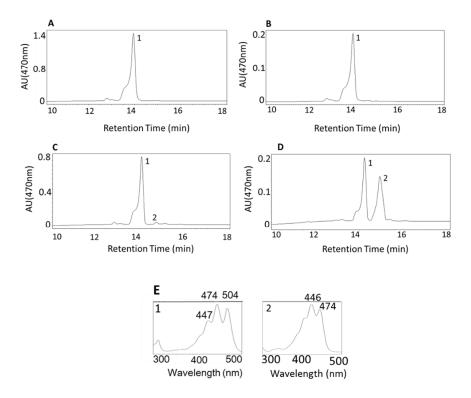


Figure 23. HPLC analysis of carotenoids formed in α- Carotene producing *E. coli* strain that had been transformed with the sweetpotato IbCYP97B genes. **A**, pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe -pRSF-IbCYP97B1 (+IPTG); **B**, pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe -pRSF-IbCYP97B2 (+IPTG); **C** pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe -pRSF-IbCYP97B1 (-IPTG); **D**, pACCRT-EIB+MpLCYb/MpLCYe pRSF-IbCYP97B2 (-IPTG). Whereas, **E** represents the absorption spectrum of individual peak for**1**, β- Carotene.; **2**, lycopene; **3**, δ- Carotene and **4**, α- Carotene.

3.7.3 Conclusion

Present results for activity analysis in case of *IbCYP97A* and IbCYP97B revealed that these genes have no individual effect in hydroxylation of carotenes.Such

reults coincide with previous reports on some other plant species However, further experimentas are essential for complete elucidation of P450 cytochrome based IbCYP97 families. For example, it would be important to test the combined activity of IbBHY, IbCYPA(s) IbCYP97B(s) and or more necessarily IbCYPC(s) to fully understand the molecular bases for the lutein and other carotenoid hydroxylation products in sweetpotato.

3.8 ANALYSIS OF CAROTENOIDS FROM TRANSGENIC SWEETPOTATO CARRYING BACTERIAL β -CAROTENE KETOLASE (*CRTW*) GENES

3.8.1 Sweetpotato W71 Tuber Transformation with the *Agrobacterium* EHA101 Cells carrying *crtW* Construct and Culturing

The *crtW* gene constructs were prepared by the following the method reported earlier by Hasunuma et al., (2008) with modifications. pUC19 high copy cloning vector for replication *in E. coli*, suitable for "blue-white screening" technique was used to manipulate with the β -amylase promoter (Maeo et al., 2001).

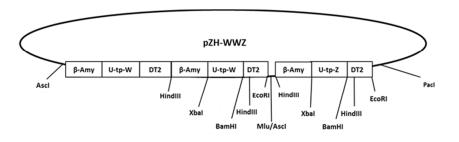


Figure 24. β-amylase promoter construct of *crtW* gene showing arrangement of promoter, gene and terminator.

After performing all construction with the auxiliary plasmid (modified pUC19), the gene cassette part were excised with 8 base recognition enzymes PacI and Sall and ligated into the pZH2B binary vector (Kuroda et al., 2010). Since the multi-cloning site of the auxiliary plasmid is the same as the basic binary vector, it is possible to put in and out promoters etc. using the same restriction enzyme site (Hajdukiewicz et al., 1994).

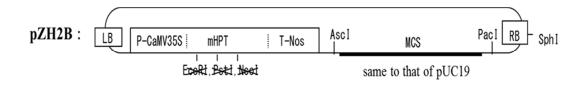


Figure 25. Binary vector pZH2B with summarized arrangements of promoter, gene, and terminator. The pZH2B binary vector harboring the *crtW* construct was used to transform the *Agrobacterium* strain EH101 (Cm^r) by electroporation as described earlier (Fujisawa et al., 2009). *Agrobacterium* transformation and culturing of sweetpotato W71 tuber was performed by following the protocol reported by Otani et al., (2003) with some modifications that will be reported later in another article.

It was reported that sweetpotato contained not only β -carotene but also several epoxy carotenoids unique to the sweetpotato tubers e.g., β -carotene-5,8-epoxiside and β -carotene-5,8,5,8' -diepoxiside (Maoka et al., 2007). Therefore, it was insighted that new structural carotenoids with epoxy and keto groups can be produced by expressing the ketolase *crtW* gene in sweetpotato tubers. In this study marine-bacterial genes that include the *crtW* gene encoding carotenoid 4,4'-ketolase (Shindo et al., 2008) were introduced into sweetpotato cultivar W71 under the control of the CaMV promoter. As the results, novel carotenoids with epoxy and keto groups **1**, **2**, and **3** were obtained along with a series of ketocarotenoids. The the structural elucidation of these novel epoxy-keto carotenoids was elucidated by HPLC-PDA analysis and were identified based on UV-vis, ESI-MS, ¹H-NMR, and CD spectral data and confirmed by COSY and NOESY experiments.

3.8.2 HPLC-PDA Analysis and Identification of Novel Carotenoids in Transgenic Sweetpotato by UV-vis, ESI-MS, ¹H-NMR, and CD Spectral Data.

Bacterial genes that include the *crtW* gene encoding carotenoid 4,4 -ketolase were expressed in the tubers (tuberous roots) of sweetpotato, *Ipomoea batatas*.(L.) Lam. Consequently, three novel carotenoids with epoxy and keto groups **1**, **2**, and **3** were found to be produced in sweetpotato. The structures of **1**, **2**, and **3** were determined as 5,8 -epoxy-5,8 -dihydro- β , β -caroten-4-one (named ecinenone 5,8 -epoxide), 5,6 -epoxy-5,6 -dihydro- β , β -caroten-4-one (named echinenone 5,6 -

-epoxide), and 3 -hydroxy-5,6 -epoxy-5,6 -dihydro- β , β -caroten-4-one (named 3 -hydroxyechinenone 5,6 -epoxide), respectively, based on spectral data.

The fraction eluted with n-hexane contained β -carotene (yield 5.1 mg). The fraction eluted with acetone:*n*-hexane (5:95) contained β -carotene 5,8-epoxide (yield 0.3 mg). The fraction eluted with acetone:*n*-hexane (1: 9) contained echinenone(yield 1.1 mg) and a new carotenoid **1**(yield 0.1 mg) . The fraction eluted with acetone:*n*-hexane (3:7) contained canthaxanthin (yield 1.2 mg). The fraction eluted with acetone:*n*-hexane (5:5) contained 3[']-hydroxyechinenone, (yield 0.2 mg) a new carotenoid **3**, (yield 0.1 mg) (3*S*)-asteroidenone, (yield 0.2 mg) (3*S*)-adonirubin (yield 0.5 mg), and (3*S*,3'*S*)-astaxanthin (yield 0.2 mg). They were identified based on UV-vis, ESI-MS, ¹H-NMR, and CD spectral data. The new carotenoid **1** was isolated from the fraction eluted with acetone:*n*-hexane (1:9) by HPLC (Silica gel with acetone: *n*-hexane (2:8) at a flow rate of 2 mL/min).

The yield of new carotenoid **2**, Echinenone 5,6-epoxide was only 0.01 mg from 10 g the tubers of the *crtW* gene-expressed sweetpotato. UV-vis λ max (Ether) 450 nm; HR-ESI MS; *m/z* 566.4122 (M⁺, calcd for C₄₀H₅₄O₂, 566.4124); products ions of MS/MS *m/z* 548 (M-18), 474 (M-92); Due to the small amount of the sample, ¹H-NMR could not be measured. Therefore, these spectral data were compared with semi-synthetic echinenone 5,6-epoxide and this compound was identified to be echinenone 5,6-epoxide by co-chromatography with the semi-synthetic one on HPLC (Silica gel with acetone:*n*-hexane (2:8). Synthesis of echinenone 5,6-epoxide from echinenone was performed as follows:

m-Chloroperbenzoic acid at 3.6 mg in 2 mL of dichloromethane was added to a solution of 1 mg of echinenone in 2 mL dichloromethane. The solution was stood for 20 min at room temperature in darkness. After that, the reaction mixture was partitioned with a 5% solution of NaHCO₃ and ether. The ether layer was removed and evaporated. The reaction products were submitted for preparative HPLC. Echinenone5['],6[']-epoxide; yield 0.8 mg. UV-vis λ max (Ether) 450 nm; HR-ESI MS; *m*/z 566.4122 (M⁺, calcd for C₄₀H₅₄O₂, 566.4124).

3.8.3 Identification and Confirmation of Novel Carotenoids from Transgenic W71 by UV-vis, ESI-MS, ¹H-NMR, CD Spectral data and COSY and NOESY Experiments.

The new carotenoid **1** showed an absorption maximum at 430 nm. Its molecular formula was determined as $C_{40}H_{54}O_2$ by high-resolution ESI-MS. The ¹H NMR data for **1** in CDCl₃ showed that this compound was obtained as a mixture of C-8['] epimers. Due to the small amount of samples available (about 0.1 mg), separation of their epimers was not feasible. Spectroscopic data for Echinenone 5['],8[']-epoxide (**1**) is given in the table 7. The ¹H NMR signals of H-2 to H-20 were identical to the H-2 to H-20 part of echinenone i.e., β , β -caroten-4-one (Englert, 1995).

UV-vis λ max (Ether) 430 nm; HR-ESI MS; m/z 556.4122 (M⁺, calcd for $C_{40}H_{54}O_2$, 566.4124); products ions of MS/MS *m*/z 548 (M⁺-18), 474 (M⁺-92); ¹H NMR of 8*R* isomer (CDCl₃, 500 MHz) δ 1.10 (H₃-17['], s), 1.15 (H₃-16['], s), 1.20 (2H₃-16, 17, s), 1.43 (H₃-18['], s), 1.75 (H₃-19['], s), 1.85 (H₂-2, t, J=7.5 Hz), 1.87 (H₃-18, s), 1.96 (H₃-20', s), 1.98 (H₃-20, s), 2.00 (H₃-19, s), 2.51 (H₂-4, t, *J*=7.5 Hz,), 5.16 (H-8['], br. s,), 5.17 (H-7['], br. s), 6.20 (H-10['], d, J=11 Hz,), 6.22 (H-14['], d, J=11Hz), 6.23 (H-7, d, J=16Hz), 6.28 (H-10, d, J=11 Hz), 6.30 (H-14, d, J=11Hz,), 6.30 (H-10, d, J=11Hz), 6.32 (H-12['], d, J=15Hz), 6.37 (H-8, d, J=16 Hz), 6.43 (H-12, d, J=15Hz), 6.51 (H-11['], dd, *J*=15, 11 Hz), 6.63 (H-15 and H-15['], m), 6.64 (H-11, dd, *J*=15,11 Hz). ¹H NMR of 8S isomer (CDCl₃, 500 MHz) δ 1.11 (H₃-17', s), 1.18 (H₃-16', 3), 1.20 (2H₃-16, 17, s), 1.46 (H₃-18', s), 1.80 (H₃-19', s), 1.85 (H₂-2, t, *J*=7.5 Hz,), 1.87 (H-18, s), 1.96 (H₃-20', s), 1.98 (H₃-20, s), 2.00 (H₃-19, s), 2.51 (H₂-4, t, J=7.5 Hz,), 5.07 (H-8 br. s), 5.23 (H-7, d, J=1.5 Hz,), 6.20 (H-10['], d, J=11 Hz,), 6.22 (H-14['], d, J=11Hz), 6.23 (H-7, d, J=16Hz), 6.28 (H-10, d, J=11 Hz), 6.30 (H-14, d, J=11Hz,), 6.30 (H-10, d, J=11Hz), 6.32 (H-12, d, J=15Hz), 6.37 (H-8, d, J=16 Hz), 6.43 (H-12, d, J=15Hz), 6.51 (H-11, dd, J=15, 11 Hz), 6.63 (H-15 and H-15, m), 6.64 (H-11, dd, *J*=15,11 Hz). The ratio of 8*R* and 8S isomer was 6:4.

Table 7. Spectroscopic data for Echinenone a new carotenoid **1**, 5['], 8[']-epoxide in the tubers of the *crtW* gene-expressed sweet potato. Yield 0.1 mg from 100 g obtained as mixture of 8['] R and 8[']S isomers.

The ¹H signals of the remaining part (H-2 to H-20) in the major epimer of **1** were identical to those parts of (5*R*,8*R*,5 *R*,8 *R*)-aurochrome (5,8, 5,8 -diepoxy-5,8, 5,8 -tetrahydro- β , β -carotene) (Englert, 1995). All *trans* geometry of the polyene chain was revealed by chemical shift values and their coupling constants. (Englert, 1995) This structure was confirmed by COSY and NOESY experiments, as shown in figure 26. Therefore, the structure of this compound was determined to be (5*R*, 8*R*)-5,8 -epoxy-5,8 -dihydro- β , β -caroten-4-one and named echinenone 5,8 -epoxide. On the other hand, ¹H signals of the minor epimer of H-2 to H-20 and H-2 to H-20 were identical to those of echinenone (H-2 to H-20) and (5*R*,8*S*,5*R*,8*S*)-aurochrome. (Englert, 1995) Therefore, the structure of the minor isomer was determined to be (6*R*,8*S*)-5,8' -epoxy-5,8' -dihydro- β , β -caroten-4-one. The ratio of 8*R* and 8*S* epimers of **1** was estimated to be 6:4 from the intensities of ¹H NMR signals.

It is well-known that 5,8-epoxy-carotenoids are derived from the corresponding 5,6-epoxy-carotenoids via epoxide-furanoid rearrangements by acid catalysis.(Schiedt and Liaaen-Jensen, 1995). Therefore, it was assumed that the sweetpotato echinenone 5.6-epoxide in was intact form of 1 $(5,6'-\text{epoxy}-5,6'-\text{dihydro}-\beta,\beta-\text{caroten}-4-\text{one})$, and echinenone 5,8' epoxide was converted from echinenone 5,6 -epoxide during the isolation procedures. In order to test this hypothesis, sweetpotato was extracted under alkaline medium conditions and the obtained carotenoids were analyzed. Consequently, echinenone 5,6-epoxide (2) could be identified along with β -carotene 5,6-epoxide under alkaline medium conditions extract of carotenoid of sweetpotato. The spectroscopic data for echinenone 5,6-epoxide (2) is shown in table 8. This result clearly indicated that echinenone 5,8-epoxide (1) was present as echinenone 5,6-epoxide (2) in sweetpotato.

Echinenone5['],6[']-epoxide; yield 0.8 mg. UV-vis λ max (Ether) 450 nm; HR-ESI MS; *m*/*z* 566.4122 (M⁺, calcd for C₄₀H₅₄O₂, 566.4124); products ions of MS/MS *m*/*z* 548 (M⁺-18), 474 (M⁺-92); ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 500 MHz) δ 0.94 1.10 (H₃-16['], s), 1.10 (H₃-17['], s), 1.15 (H₃-18', s), 1.20 (2H₃-16-17, s), 1.85 (H₂-2, t,

J=7.5 Hz), 1.87 (H₃-18, s), 1.94 (H₃-19, s), 1.96 (H₃-20, s), 1.98 (H₃-20, s), 2.00 (H₃-19, s), 2.51 (H₂-4, t, *J*=7.5 Hz,), 5.88 (H-7, d, *J*=16Hz), 6.20 (H-10, d, *J*=11 Hz,), 6.22 (H-14, d, *J*=11Hz), 6.23 (H-7, d, *J*=16Hz), 6.28 (H-10, d, *J*=11 Hz), 6.29 (H-8, d, *J*=16Hz), 6.30 (H-14, d, *J*=11Hz), 6.32 (H-12, d, *J*=15Hz), 6.37 (H-8, d, *J*=16 Hz), 6.43 (H-12, d, *J*=15Hz), 6.51 (H-11, dd, *J*=15, 11 Hz), 6.63 (H-15 and H-15, m), 6.64 (H-11, dd, *J*=15, 11 Hz).

Table 8. Spectroscopic data for new carotenoid 2 (Echinenone5,6-epoxide) in the tubers of the *crtW* gene-expressed sweet potato. Yield 0.8 mg from 100 g.

The semi-synthetic echinenone 5,6 epoxide was obtained as a mixture of enantiomers and showed no optical activity.

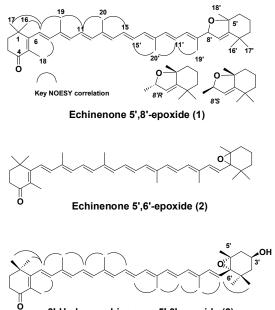
The new carotenoid **3** showed an absorption maximum at 452 nm. Its molecular formula was determined as $C_{40}H_{54}O_3$ by high-resolution ESI-MS. Spectroscopic data for 3'-Hydroxyechinenone 5',6'-epoxide (**3**) is given in table 9. The ¹H NMR data for **3** in CDCl₃ also showed the presence of an echinenone moiety (H-2 to H-20). Schiedt and Liaaen-Jensen, 1995; (Britton et al., 2004). The ¹H NMR signals of the remaining part (H-2' to H-20') were identical to those of violaxanthin (5,6, 5',6'-diepoxy-5,6, 5',6' -tetrahydero- β_{β} -carotene-3,3'-diol) as reported in literature (Englert, 1995). All *trans* geometry of the polyene chain was revealed by chemical shift values and their coupling constants (Englert, 1995). This structure was confirmed by COSY and NOESY experiments, as shown in Figure 26.

UV-vis λ max (Ether) 452 nm; HR-ESI MS; *m/z* 583.4150 (MH⁺, calcd for C₄₀H₅₅O₃,583.4151); products ions of MS/MS *m/z* 565 (MH⁺-18), 491 (MH⁺-92); ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 500 MHz) δ 0.98 (H₃-16', s), 1.15 (H₃-17', s), 1.19 (H₃-18', s,), 1.20 (2H₃-16, 17, s), 1.23 (H2'-ax, dd, *J*= 14, 13 Hz), 1.66 (H-2'eq and H-4'-ax, overlapped), 1.85 (H₂-2, t, *J*=7.5 Hz), 1.88 (H₃-18, s), 1.93 (H₃-19', s), 1.97 (H₃-20', s), 1.98 (H₃-20, s), 2.00 (H₃-19, s), 2.37 (H-4'eq, ddd, *J*=14, 5, 1.5 Hz,), 2.51 (H₂-4, t, *J*=7.5 Hz), 3.91 (H-3', m), 5.89 (H-7', d, *J*=16 Hz), 6.21 (H-10', d, *J*=11 Hz), 6.23 (H-7, d, *J*=16 Hz), 6.30 (H-14', d, *J*=11 Hz), 6.37 (H-8, d,

J=16 Hz,), 6.38 (H-12', d, J=15 Hz,), 6.43 (H-12, d, J=15 Hz,), 6.62 (H-11', dd, J=15, 11 Hz), 6.64 (H-11, dd, J=15, 11 Hz,), ~6.64 (H-15 and H-5', overlapped); CD (diethyl ether) λ ($\Delta\epsilon$) 245 (+2.5), 250 (0), 280 (-5.0), 295 (0), 315 (+4.0), 342 (0), 350 (-1.5).

Table 9. Spectroscopic data for new carotenoid 3 (3'-Hydroxyechinenone 5',6'-epoxide) in the tubers of the *crtW* gene-expressed sweetpotato. Yield 0.1 mg from 100 g.

Therefore, the structure of this compound was determined as 3'-hydroxy-5',6'-epoxy-5',6'-dihydro- β , β -caroten-4-one and named 3'-hydroxyechinenone 5',6'-epoxide. The CD spectrum of **3** showed almost the same Cotton effect of (3*S*, 5*R*, 6*S*)-cryptoxanthin 5,6-epoxide (Britton et al., 2004). Therefore, a 3'*S*, 5'*R*, 6'*S* configuration was assigned to new carotenoid **3**.



3'-Hydroxyechinenone 5',6'-epoxide (3)

Figure 26. Structures and key NOESY correlation of new carotenoids **1**, **2**, and **3** formed in transgenic sweetpotato cultivar W71.

3.8.4 Proposed biosynthetic pathway of the Novel Carotenoids Produced in the Tubers of the *crtW* Gene-expressed Sweetpotato

By introducing the ketolase *crtW* gene in sweetpotato, a series of keto carotenoids, echinone, canthaxanthine, 3[']-hydroxyechinone, (3S)-asteroidenone, (3S)-adonirubin, and (3S, 3[']S)-astaxanthin were produced along with the new epoxy-carotenoids 1-3. Meanwhile, β-carotene content was decreased from 75.8% of the total carotenoids in the sweetpotato wild type to 50.6% in the ketolase gene-expressed sweetpotato. Similarly, content of β-carotene epoxides was decreased from 10.0% to 2.5%. These reults clearly indicated that β-carotene and β-carotene epoxides were used as substrates of *crtW*, and converted to a series of keto carotenoids and epoxy-keto carotenoids, respectively. Based on these results a biosynthestic pathway biosynthetic pathway of new carotenoids **1**, **2**, and **3** in the tubers of the *crtW* gene-expressed sweetpotato was also proposed and shown in figure 27.

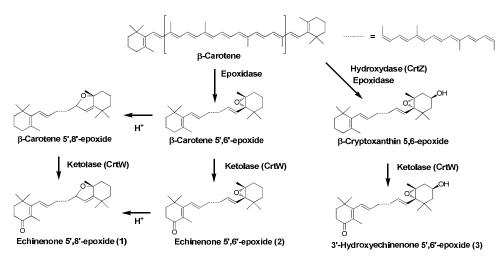


Figure 27. Proposed biosynthetic pathway of new carotenoids **1**, **2**, and **3** in the tubers of the *crtW* gene-expressed sweetpotato.

3.8.5 Conclusion

Many higher plants possess carotenoid epoxidase genes. Therefore, several epoxy carotenoids such as violaxanthin, antheraxanthin, neoxanthin, β -cryptoxanthin epoxides, and β -carotene epoxides are found in higher plants. However, higher plants do not ordinarily possess keto carotenoid due to the absence of the carotenoid ketolase gene (Britton et al., 1998). Therefore, epoxy-keto carotenoids, eichinenone 5',8'-epoxide (echinenone 5',6'-epoxide), and 3'-hydroxyechinenone 5',6'-epoxide are not present in higher plants.

4. GENERAL CONCLUSION AND FUTURE PROSPECTS

The oxygenated and or hydroxylated carotenoids products found in weetpotato suggested valuable information and a compressive molecular map for carotenoids with varied composition These results will support not only the further molecular cloning and elucidation of carotenoids biosynthesis genes and their pathway engineering based on the carotenoids biosynthesis pathway proposed in this study but also the molecular breeding of sweetpotato for future nutritional, medicinal and industrial gains. Lycopene cyclases isolated from both cultivars showed significant homology and individually formed single clades that were positioned close to the corresponding proteins from potato (Solanum tuberosum) and tomato (Solanum lycopersicum), which, like sweetpotato, belong to the order Solanale. The presence of multiple copies of *IbLCYb* revealed significant genetic variation present in the individual genome of W71 and WS. These results suggest that the cyclase genes might be distributed across different chromosal sets in the hexaploid sweetpotato genome. Moreover, the *lbLCYb5* with an inside deletion support that there may be other naturally existing mutations in sweetpotato which can be explored further for comparative analysis and understanding of the molecular genetic variation in sweetpotato. Both *IbBHY1* and *IbBHY2* closely branched with tomato β - Carotene hydroxylases at one end and with wheat and maize at the other. These results show that the sweetpotato occupies evolutionary space after bacteria, algae, lower vascular plants in evolutionary hierarchy after monocots. The present results revealed that *IbBHY* genes possess β -ring hydroxylation activity for β -carotene to produce zeaxanthin via β -cryptoxanthin which are pro vitamin A carotenoids. These results will provide comprehension in further genetic engineering for the enhanced β -Carotene hydroxylated carotenoids for the improvement of pro-vitamin A carotenoids in sweetpotato production by RNAi based silencing or genome editing approaches Moreover, these results will help better in further interpretations of the mechanism of xanthophylls biosynthesis in sweetpotato. Present results for *lbCYP97A* and *lbCYP97B* showed almost similar function to that reported in other plant species when tested individually using either α -Carotene or β -Carotene as substrates. However, further experiments are essential for complete elucidation of P450 cytochrome based

IbCYP97 families for understanding the molecular mechanism by which these genes interact with other counterparts for the catalysation of of lutein formation in sweetpotato. For example, it would be important to test the combined activity of *IbBHY* with *IbCYPA*(*s*), *IbCYPb*(*s*) and or more necessarily *IbCYPC*(*s*) in separate control experiments to fully understand the molecular bases for the lutein and other carotenoid hydroxylation products in sweetpotato. The presence of several epoxy carotenoids such as violaxanthin, antheraxanthin, neoxanthin, β -cryptoxanthin epoxides, and β -carotene epoxides in higher plants is due to the existence of carotenoid epoxidase genes. However, higher plants do not ordinarily possess keto carotenoid due to the absence of the carotenoid ketolase gene crtW. In the present study, *crtW* gene was transferred into sweetpotato as a foreign gene as a result epoxy-keto carotenoids, eichinenone 5,8-epoxide, echinenone 5,6-epoxide and 3'-hydroxyechinenone 5',6'-epoxidewere generated in sweetpotato which are new carotenoids produced for the first time in sweetpotato. Futher, the results will help in planning and engineering for enhanced astaxanthin which has immensely increasing market demands because of its multipurpose uses. The novel carotenoids can also be further tested for their use in medicine, cosmetic or chemical industry for economic uses. These results will be the strong base for future based metabolic and pathway engineering of sweetpotato and their evaluation for potential use in pharmaceutical, and cosmetic industry.

APPENDIX

Buffers, Solutions and Media

SOC Media

Tryptone 2% (w/v) Yeast extract 0.5% (w/v) NaCl 10 mM KCl 2.5 mM MgCl₂ 10 mM Glucose 20 mM (For 1L: 20 g/L Tryptone; 5 g/L Yeast Extract; 4.8 g/L MgSO₄; 3.603 g/L dextrose; 0.5g/L NaCl; 0.186 g/L KCl First prepare a solution containing the first four reagents, sterilize at 121 °C, and then add sterile MgCl₂ and glucose)

2YT Media

Tryptone 1.6% Yeast Extract 1% NaCl 0.5% (For 1L: Measure approximately 900 ml of distilled H₂O. Add 16 g Bacto Tryptone, 10 g Bacto Yeast Extract and 5 g NaCl. Adjust pH to 7.0 with 5N NaOH. Adjust to 1L with distilled H₂O (optional: add bottom agar 12 g/L), Sterilize by autoclaving)

1x TAE buffer

Tris, 40mM Glacial Acetate 20mM

EDTA 1mM

For a 500-milliliter stock solution of 0.5 M EDTA, weigh out 93.05 grams of EDTA disodium salt (FW = 372.2). Dissolve in 400-milliliter deionized water and adjust the pH with sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Top up the solution to a final volume of 500 milliliters.

Fo 50x stock solution of TAE: weigh 242 grams of Tris base (FW = 121.14) and dissolve in approximately 750 milliliters of deionized water.Carefully add 57.1milliliters of glacial acid and 100 milliliters of 0.5 M EDTA (pH 8.0). After that, adjust the solution to a final volume of 1 liter.

1X TE buffer

Tris, 10 mM adjust pH 8.0 with HCl EDTA 1mM (EDTA: 0.5M Ethylene diamine tetra-acetic acid, pH 8.0)

1× STE Buffer

100 mM NaCl 20 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.5) 10 mM EDTA

IPTG: 0.1M Isopropyl-β-D-thiogalactopyranoside in sterile water

X-gal

5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl- β -D-galactopyranoside 2% (w/v) in dimethylformamide (DMF)

100 mg/ml Ampicillin .5 g in 5 ml sterile distilled water. Dissolve and filter sterilize. Store in aliquots at -20 C

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Alam Z., and Sultan M. "Carotenoids Contents from Various Sources and Their Potential Health Applications." *Pakistan Journal of Nutrition* 3, no. 3 (2004): 199-204. doi:10.3923/pjn.2004.199.204.
- Abdel-Aal, El-Sayed, Humayoun Akhtar, Khalid Zaheer, and Rashida Ali. "Dietary Sources of Lutein and Zeaxanthin Carotenoids and Their Role in Eye Health." *Nutrients* 5, no. 4 (2013): 1169-1185. doi:10.3390/nu5041169.
- Agranoff, B.W., Eggerer, H, Henning U, and Lynen F. "Biosynthesis of terpenes. VII. Isopentenyl pyrophosphate isomerase." *J. Biol. Chem* 235 (1960): 326–332.
- Aguoru, Celestine U., Patience Uhia, and Joseph O. Olasan. "Varietal Characterisation and Taxonomic Evaluation of Sweet Potato (Ipomoea batatas) Using Macro- and Micromorphological Evidence." *OALib* 02, no. 08 (2015): 1-7. doi:10.4236/oalib.1101757.
- Ahn, Young O., Sun H. Kim, Cha Y. Kim, Joon-Seol Lee, Sang-Soo Kwak, and Haeng-Soon Lee. "Exogenous sucrose utilization and starch biosynthesis among sweetpotato cultivars." *Carbohydrate Research* 345, no. 1 (2010): 55-60. doi:10.1016/j.carres.2009.08.025.
- Alam, Mohammad, Ziaul Rana, and Sheikh Islam. "Comparison of the Proximate Composition, Total Carotenoids and Total Polyphenol Content of Nine Orange-Fleshed Sweet Potato Varieties Grown in Bangladesh." *Foods* 5, no. 3 (2016): 64. doi:10.3390/foods5030064.
- Alquezar, B., L. Zacarias, and M. J. Rodrigo. "Molecular and functional characterization of a novel chromoplast-specific lycopene -cyclase from Citrus and its relation to lycopene accumulation." *Journal of Experimental Botany* 60, no. 6 (2009): 1783-1797. doi:10.1093/jxb/erp048.
- Antonio, G.C., C.Y.Takeiti, R.A. De Oliveira, and K.J. Park. "Sweet Potato: Production, Morphological and Physicochemical Characteristics, and Technological Process." *Fruit, Vegetable and Cereal Science and Biotechnology* Antonio, G.C., Takeiti, C.Y., de Oliveira R.A., and Park, K.J. 2011.Sweet Potato: Production, Morphological and Physicochemical

Characteristics, and Technological Process. Fruit, Vegetable and Cereal Science and Biotechnology 5 (Special Issue 2), 1-18, 2011. 14 (2011): 1-18.

- Arizio, C. M., S. M. Costa Tártara, and M. M. Manifesto. "Carotenoids gene markers for sweetpotato (*Ipomoea batatas* L. Lam): applications in genetic mapping, diversity evaluation and cross-species transference." *Molecular Genetics and Genomics* 289, no. 2 (2014): 237-251. doi:10.1007/s00438-013-0803-3.
- Armstrong, G. A., Schmidt A, Sandmann, G., and Hearst G. E. "Genetic and bio-chemical characterization of carotenoid biosynthesis mutants of Rhodobacter capsulatus." *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 265 (1990): 8329-8338.
- Armstrong, Gregory A., Marie Alberti, Francesca Leach, and John E. Hearst.
 "Nucleotide sequence, organization, and nature of the protein products of the carotenoid biosynthesis gene cluster of *Rhodobacter capsulatus*."
 MGG Molecular & General Genetics 216, no. 2-3 (1989): 254-268. doi:10.1007/bf00334364.
- Arscott, Sara A., and Sherry A. Tanumihardjo. "Carrots of Many Colors Provide Basic Nutrition and Bioavailable Phytochemicals Acting as a Functional Food." *Comprehensive Reviews in Food Science and Food Safety* 9, no. 2 (2010): 223-239. doi:10.1111/j.1541-4337.2009.00103.x.
- As-Saqui, M. A. "Sweetpotato and its potential impact in Liberia." In *In: Sweetpotato Proceedings of the First International Symposium;* 59. Villareal RL, Griggs TD, Eds, 1982.
- Austin, D.F. "The taxonomy, evolution and genetic diversity of sweet potatoes and related wild species." In *Proceedings of the First Planning ConferenceInternational Potato Center (CIP), 1987, pp. 27–59.* Lima, Peru1987.
- Austin, Daniel F., and Zosimo Huaman. "A Synopsis of *Ipomoea* (Convolvulaceae) in the Americas." *Taxon* 45, no. 1 (1996): 3. doi:10.2307/1222581.

- AVRDC. Composition of edible fiber in sweetpotato tips; In: Asian Vegetable Research and Development Center Progress Report. Composition of edible fiber in sweetpotato tips, 1985.
- Azadi, Pejman, Ntui V. Otang, Dong P. Chin, Ikuo Nakamura, Masaki Fujisawa, Hisashi Harada, Norihiko Misawa, and Masahiro Mii. "Metabolic engineering of *Lilium × formolongi* using multiple genes of the carotenoid biosynthesis pathway." *Plant Biotechnology Reports* 4, no. 4 (2010): 269-280. doi:10.1007/s11816-010-0147-y.
- Baranski, Rafal, and Christopher I. Cazzonelli. "Carotenoid Biosynthesis and Regulation in Plants." *Carotenoids*, 2016, 159-189. doi:10.1002/9781118622223.ch10.
- Bartley, G. E., P. V. Viitanen, I. Pecker, D. Chamovitz, J. Hirschberg, and P. A. Scolnik. "Molecular cloning and expression in photosynthetic bacteria of a soybean cDNA coding for phytoene desaturase, an enzyme of the carotenoid biosynthesis pathway." *Proceedings of the National Academy* of Sciences 88, no. 15 (1991): 6532-6536. doi:10.1073/pnas.88.15.6532.
- Bartley, Glenn E., and Pablo A. Scolnik. "New Genetic Tools for *Rhodobacter capsulatus* and Structure and Expression of Genes for Carotenoid Biosynthesis." *Molecular Biology of Membrane-Bound Complexes in Phototrophic Bacteria*, 1990, 33-37. doi:10.1007/978-1-4757-0893-6_5.
- Basu, Hemendra N., Anthony J. Vecchio, Frank Flider, and Frank T. Orthoeter.
 "Nutritional and potential disease prevention properties of carotenoids." *Journal of the American Oil Chemists' Society* 78, no. 7 (2001): 665-675. doi:10.1007/s11746-001-0324-x.
- Böhm, Volker. "Lycopene and heart health." *Molecular Nutrition & Food Research* 56, no. 2 (2012): 296-303. doi:10.1002/mnfr.769.
- Bendich, Adrianne. "Carotenoids and the Immune System." *Carotenoids*, 1989, 323-335. doi:10.1007/978-1-4613-0849-2_23.

- Botella-Pavia, Patricia, and Manuel Rodriguez-Concepcion. "Carotenoid biotechnology in plants for nutritionally improved foods." *Physiologia Plantarum* 126, no. 3 (2006): 369-381. doi:10.1111/j.1399-3054.2006.00632.x.
- Bourke, M. "Sweet potato in Oceania." In *The Sweet Potato.*, edited by Loebenstein G and Thottappilly G. Berlin: Springer, 2009.
- Bouvier, Florence, Philippe Hugueney, Alain D'Harlingue, Marcel Kuntz, and Bilal Camara. "Xanthophyll biosynthesis in chromoplasts: isolation and molecular cloning of an enzyme catalyzing the conversion of 5,6-epoxycarotenoid into ketocarotenoid." *The Plant Journal* 6, no. 1 (1994): 45-54. doi:10.1046/j.1365-313x.1994.6010045.x.
- Bovell Benjamin, Adelia C. "Sweet Potato: A Review of its Past, Present, and Future Role in Human Nutrition." *Advances in Food and Nutrition Research*, 2007, 1-59. doi:10.1016/s1043-4526(06)52001-7.
- Bowen, Phyllis, Longwen Chen, Maria Stacewicz-Sapuntzakis, Claudine Duncan, Roohollah Sharifi. Luna Ghosh. Hyung-Sook Kim. Konstantin Christov-Tzelkov. and Richard V. Breemen. "Tomato Sauce Supplementation and Prostate Cancer: Lycopene Accumulation and Modulation of Biomarkers of Carcinogenesis." Experimental Biology and Medicine 10 (2002): 886-893. 227, no. doi:10.1177/153537020222701008.
- Breitenbach, Jürgen, Chao Bai, Sol M. Rivera, Ramon Canela, Teresa Capell, Paul Christou, Changfu Zhu, and Gerhard Sandmann. "A novel carotenoid, 4-keto-α-carotene, as an unexpected by-product during genetic engineering of carotenogenesis in rice callus." *Phytochemistry* 98 (2014): 85-91. doi:10.1016/j.phytochem.2013.12.008.
- Britton, G. "Structure and properties of carotenoids in relation to function." FASEB J 9, no. 15 (1995): 1551-1558. http://www.fasebj.org/content/9/15/1551.abstract.
- Britton, G. Liaaen-Jenson, S. and Pfander, H., (Eds), "Carotenoids Handbook Compiled by A. Z. Mercadante and E. S. Egeland, Birkhauser Verlag,

Basle, Switzerland, 2004." *Free Radical Research* 38, no. 8 (2004): 885-885. doi:10.1080/10715760410001727849.

- Burns, Jennifer, Paul D. Fraser, and Peter M. Bramley. "Identification and quantification of carotenoids, tocopherols and chlorophylls in commonly consumed fruits and vegetables." *Phytochemistry* 62, no. 6 (2003): 939-947. doi:10.1016/s0031-9422(02)00710-0.
- Burri, Betty. "The Current Impact and Potential of Biotechnology to Improve the Capacity of Orange-fleshed Sweet Potato (Ipomoea batatas) to Prevent Vitamin A Deficiency." *Bulbous Plants*, 2013, 287-310. doi:10.1201/b16136-18.
- Buteler, M. I., R. L. Jarret, and D.R. LaBonte. "Sequence characterization of microsatellites in diploid and polyploid Ipomoea." *TAG Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 99, no. 1-2 (1999): 123-132. doi:10.1007/s001220051216.
- Carrillo-Lopez. "Bioconversion of Carotenoids in Five Fruits and Vegetables to Vitamin A Measured by Retinol Accumulation in Rat Livers." *American Journal of Agricultural and Biological Sciences* 5, no. 2 (2010): 215-221. doi:10.3844/ajabssp.2010.215.221.
- Cazzonelli, Christopher I. "Goldacre Review: Carotenoids in nature: insights from plants and beyond." *Functional Plant Biology* 38, no. 11 (2011): 833. doi:10.1071/fp11192.
- Cazzonelli, Christopher I., and Barry J. Pogson. "Source to sink: regulation of carotenoid biosynthesis in plants." *Trends in Plant Science* 15, no. 5 (2010): 266-274. doi:10.1016/j.tplants.2010.02.003.
- Chagonda, I., R. F. Mapfeka, and T. Chitata. "Effect of Tillage Systems and Vine Orientation on Yield of Sweet Potato (Ipomoea batatas L.)." *American Journal of Plant Sciences* 05, no. 21 (2014): 3159-3165. doi:10.4236/ajps.2014.521332.

- Chamovitz, Daniel, Norihiko Misawa, Gerhard Sandmann, and Joseph Hirschberg. "Molecular cloning and expression in *Escherichia coli* of a cyanobacterial gene coding for phytoene synthase, a carotenoid biosynthesis enzyme." *FEBS Letters* 296, no. 3 (1992): 305-310. doi:10.1016/0014-5793(92)80310-d.
- Chappell, J., F. Wolf, J. Proulx, R. Cuellar, and C. Saunders. "Is the Reaction Catalyzed by 3-Hydroxy-3-Methylglutaryl Coenzyme A Reductase a Rate-Limiting Step for Isoprenoid Biosynthesis in Plants?" *Plant Physiology* 109, no. 4 (1995): 1337-1343. doi:10.1104/pp.109.4.1337.
- Chappell, Joseph. "Biochemistry and Molecular Biology of the Isoprenoid Biosynthetic Pathway in Plants." *Annual Review of Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology* 46, no. 1 (1995): 521-547. doi:10.1146/annurev.pp.46.060195.002513.
- Chen, Y., F. Li, and E. T. Wurtzel. "Isolation and Characterization of the Z-ISO Gene Encoding a Missing Component of Carotenoid Biosynthesis in Plants." *PLANT PHYSIOLOGY* 153, no. 1 (2010): 66-79. doi:10.1104/pp.110.153916.
- Chichili, G.R., D. Nohr, J. Frank, A. Flaccus, and P. D. Fraser. "Protective effects of tomato extract with elevated beta-carotene levels on oxidative stress in ARPE-19 cells." *Br J Nutr* 96, no. 4 (2006): 643-649.
- Choi, Seon-Kang, Hisashi Harada, Satoru Matsuda, and Norihiko Misawa.
 "Characterization of two β-carotene ketolases, CrtO and CrtW, by complementation analysis in *Escherichia coli*." *Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology* 75, no. 6 (2007): 1335-1341.
 doi:10.1007/s00253-007-0967-z.
- Cho, Jungsook, Jong S. Kang, Pham H. Long, Jhang Jing, Yiho Back, and Kyeong-Soo Chung. "Antioxidant and memory enhancing effects of purple sweet potato anthocyanin and cordyceps mushroom extract." *Archives of Pharmacal Research* 26, no. 10 (2003): 821-825. doi:10.1007/bf02980027.

- CIP. CIP 40th anniversary: celebrating the impacts. International Potato Center Annual Report 2011, 2011. ISSN 0256-6311 DOI: 10.4160/0256-6311/2011.
- Clotault, J., D. Peltier, R. Berruyer, M. Thomas, M. Briard, and E. Geoffriau.
 "Expression of carotenoid biosynthesis genes during carrot root development." *Journal of Experimental Botany* 59, no. 13 (2008): 3563-3573. doi:10.1093/jxb/ern210.
- Clotault, Jérémy, Emmanuel Geoffriau, Eric Lionneton, Mathilde Briard, and Didier Peltier. "Carotenoid biosynthesis genes provide evidence of geographical subdivision and extensive linkage disequilibrium in the carrot." *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 121, no. 4 (2010): 659-672. doi:10.1007/s00122-010-1338-1.
- Coomber, S. A., M. Chaudhri, A. Connor, G. Britton, and C. N. Hunter. "Localized transposon Tn5 mutagenesis of the photosynthetic gene cluster of Rhodobacter sphaeroides." *Molecular Microbiology* 4, no. 6 (1990): 977-989. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2958.1990.tb00670.x.
- Cunningham, F. X., and E. Gantt. "One ring or two? Determination of ring number in carotenoids by lycopene -cyclases." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 98, no. 5 (2001): 2905-2910. doi:10.1073/pnas.051618398.
- Cunningham, Francis X. "Regulation of carotenoid synthesis and accumulation in plants." *Pure and Applied Chemistry* 74, no. 8 (2002). doi:10.1351/pac200274081409.
- Cunningham, Francis X., Daniel Chamovitz, Norihiko Misawa, Elisabeth Gantt, and Joseph Hirschberg. "Cloning and functional expression in *Escherichia coli* of a cyanobacterial gene for lycopene cyclase, the enzyme that catalyzes the biosynthesis of β-carotene." *FEBS Letters* 328, no. 1-2 (1993): 130-138. doi:10.1016/0014-5793(93)80980-9.
- Cunningham, Francis X., Barry Pogson, Zairen Sun, Kelly A. McDonald, Dean DellaPenna, and Elisabeth Gantt. "Functional Analysis of the β and ε Lycopene Cyclase Enzymes of Arabidopsis Reveals a Mechanism for

Control of Cyclic Carotenoid Formation." *The Plant Cell* 8, no. 9 (1996): 1613. doi:10.2307/3870254.

- Cunningham, Francis X., Zairen Sun, Daniel Chamovitz, Joseph Hirschberg, and Elisabeth Gantt. "Molecular Structure and Enzymatic Function of Lycopene Cyclase from the Cyanobacterium Synechococcus sp Strain PCC7942." *The Plant Cell* 6, no. 8 (1994): 1107. doi:10.2307/3869889.
- Das, Amitabha, Sang-Hwal Yoon, Sook-Hee Lee, Jae-Yean Kim, Deok-Kun Oh, and Seon-Won Kim. "An update on microbial carotenoid production: application of recent metabolic engineering tools." *Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology* 77, no. 3 (2007): 505-512. doi:10.1007/s00253-007-1206-3.
- Deli, József, Péter Molnár, Zoltán Matus, and Gyula Tóth. "Carotenoid Composition in the Fruits of Red Paprika (*Capsicum annuum* var.*lycopersiciforme rubrum*) during Ripening; Biosynthesis of Carotenoids in Red Paprika." *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 49, no. 3 (2001): 1517-1523. doi:10.1021/jf000958d.
- Devitt, L. C., K. Fanning, R. G. Dietzgen, and T. A. Holton. "Isolation and functional characterization of a lycopene -cyclase gene that controls fruit colour of papaya (Carica papaya L.)." *Journal of Experimental Botany* 61, no. 1 (2009): 33-39. doi:10.1093/jxb/erp284.
- Diop, A. Storage and processing of roots and tubers in the tropics. In Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations Agricultural Support Systems Division. Food and Agriculture Organization, Rome, Italy; Agro-Industries and Post-Harvest Management Service, D.J.B. Calverley ed.,page, 38-50, 1998.
- Dogbo, O., A. Laferriere, A. D'Harlingue, and B. Camara. "Carotenoid biosynthesis: Isolation and characterization of a bifunctional enzyme catalyzing the synthesis of phytoene." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 85, no. 19 (1988): 7054-7058. doi:10.1073/pnas.85.19.7054.

- Edge, R., D.J. McGarvey, and T.G. Truscott. "The carotenoids as anti-oxidants a review." *Journal of Photochemistry and Photobiology B: Biology* 41, no. 3 (1997): 189-200. doi:10.1016/s1011-1344(97)00092-4.
- Eisenreich, W., A. Bacher, D. Arigoni, and F. Rohdich. "Biosynthesis of isoprenoids via the non-mevalonate pathway." *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences* 61, no. 12 (2004). doi:10.1007/s00018-004-3381-z.
- Ellong, Emy N., Corinne Billard, and Sandra Adenet. "Comparison of Physicochemical, Organoleptic and Nutritional Abilities of Eight Sweet Potato (Ipomoea batatas) Varieties." *Food and Nutrition Sciences* 05, no. 02 (2014): 196-311. doi:10.4236/fns.2014.52025.
- Murillo, E."Hypercholesterolemic effect of canthaxanthin and astaxanthin in rats." *Biomedical Chromatography* 42, no. 4 (1992): 409-413. doi:10.1002/bmc.3852.
- Engelmann, N. J., S. K. Clinton, and J. W. Erdman. "Nutritional Aspects of Phytoene and Phytofluene, Carotenoid Precursors to Lycopene." *Advances in Nutrition: An International Review Journal* 2, no. 1 (2011): 51-61. doi:10.3945/an.110.000075.
- Englert, G. "NMR spectroscopy." In *Carotenoid Hand Book, Vol. 1B*, edited by Britton G, Liaaen-Jensen, and Pfander, 1995 ed., 147-260. Basel n.d.
- Erdman, John W., Nikki A. Ford, and Brian L. Lindshield. "Are the health attributes of lycopene related to its antioxidant function?" *Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics* 483, no. 2 (2009): 229-235. doi:10.1016/j.abb.2008.10.022.
- "FAOSTAT." Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. Last modified January 13, 2017. http://www.fao.org/faostat/en/#search/Sweet%20potatoes.
- Farré, Gemma, Sol Maiam Rivera, Rui Alves, Ester Vilaprinyo, Albert Sorribas, Ramon Canela, Shaista Naqvi, et al. "Targeted transcriptomic and metabolic profiling reveals temporal bottlenecks in the maize carotenoid

pathway that may be addressed by multigene engineering." *The Plant Journal* 75, no. 3 (2013): 441-455. doi:10.1111/tpj.12214.

- Fiedor, Joanna, and Květoslava Burda. "Potential Role of Carotenoids as Antioxidants in Human Health and Disease." *Nutrients* 6, no. 2 (2014): 466-488. doi:10.3390/nu6020466.
- Fiore, Alessia, Luca Dall'Osto, Paul D. Fraser, Roberto Bassi, and Giovanni Giuliano. "Elucidation of the β-carotene hydroxylation pathway inArabidopsis thaliana." *FEBS Letters* 580, no. 19 (2006): 4718-4722. doi:10.1016/j.febslet.2006.07.055.
- FOD025C. "bcc research." Last modified 2008. http://www.bccresearch.com/report/FOD025C.html.
- FAOSTAT. Food and Agricultural Statistical database. (*Sweetpotato World Production*). 2017. http://www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data/QC/visualize.
- Foote, C.S. *Free radicals in biology*, 3rd ed. New York: Academic press, 1976.
- Fraser, P.D., and P.M. Bramley. "Metabolic Profiling and Quantification of Carotenoids and Related Isoprenoids in Crop Plants." *Plant Metabolomics* (n.d.): 229-242. doi:10.1007/3-540-29782-0_17.
- Fraser, P.D., Y. Miura, and N. Misawa. "In Vitro Characterization of Astaxanthin Biosynthetic Enzymes." *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 272, no. 10 (1997): 6128-6135. doi:10.1074/jbc.272.10.6128.
- Fraser, P. "The biosynthesis and nutritional uses of carotenoids." *Progress in Lipid Research* 43, no. 3 (2004): 228-265. doi:10.1016/j.plipres.2003.10.002.
- Fraser, Paul D., M. E. Pinto, Daniel E. Holloway, and Peter M. Bramley.
 "Application of high-performance liquid chromatography with photodiode array detection to the metabolic profiling of plant isoprenoids." *The Plant Journal* 24, no. 4 (2000): 551-558. doi:10.1046/j.1365-313x.2000.00896.x.

- Fresco, O. L., and O. W. Boudion. "Food and nutrition security towards human security, page 1-19." Paper presented at Proceedings of the International Conference on Vegetables, June 11-13; Rome, Italy, 2002.
- Fujisawa, M., E. Takita, H. Harada, N. Sakurai, H. Suzuki, K. Ohyama, D. Shibata, and N. Misawa. "Pathway engineering of Brassica napus seeds using multiple key enzyme genes involved in ketocarotenoid formation." *Journal of Experimental Botany* 60, no. 4 (2009): 1319-1332. doi:10.1093/jxb/erp006.
- Fujita, Takao, Mikio Satake, Takeshi Watanabe, Chikara Kitajima, Wataru Miki, Katsumi Yamaguchi, and Shoji Konosu. "Pigmentation of cultured red sea bream with astaxanthin diester purified from krill oil." *NIPPON SUISAN GAKKAISHI* 49, no. 12 (1983): 1855-1861. doi:10.2331/suisan.49.1855.
- Fukumoto, L. R., and G. Mazza. "Assessing Antioxidant and Prooxidant Activities of Phenolic Compounds[†]." *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 48, no. 8 (2000): 3597-3604. doi:10.1021/jf000220w.
- Galpaz, N. "A Chromoplast-Specific Carotenoid Biosynthesis Pathway Is Revealed by Cloning of the Tomato white-flower Locus." *THE PLANT CELL ONLINE* 18, no. 8 (2006): 1947-1960. doi:10.1105/tpc.105.039966.
- Gama, Maria I., Rui P. Leite, Antonio R. Cordeiro, and Daniel J. Cantliffe.
 "Transgenic sweet potato plants obtained by Agrobacterium tumefaciens-mediated transformation." *Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture* 46, no. 3 (1996): 237-244. doi:10.1007/bf02307100.
- Garzón, G.A., K.M. Riedl, and S.J. Schwartz. "Determination of Anthocyanins, Total Phenolic Content, and Antioxidant Activity in Andes Berry (Rubus glaucusBenth)." *Journal of Food Science* 74, no. 3 (2009): C227-C232. doi:10.1111/j.1750-3841.2009.01092.x.
- Giuliano, G., D. Pollock, and P.A. Scolnik. "The crtl gene mediates the conversion of phytoene into colored carotenoids in Rhodo- pseudomonas capsulata." *J Biol Chem* 261 (1986): 12925-12929.

Ghirardo, A., L.P. Wright, Z. Bi, M. Rosenkranz, P. Pulido, M.
Rodriguez-Concepcion, U. Niinemets, N. Bruggemann, J. Gershenzon, and J.-P. Schnitzler. "Metabolic Flux Analysis of Plastidic Isoprenoid Biosynthesis in Poplar Leaves Emitting and Nonemitting Isoprene." *PLANT PHYSIOLOGY* 165, no. 1 (2014): 37-51. doi:10.1104/pp.114.236018.

- Giovannucci, E. "Obesity, gender, and colon cancer." *Gut* 51, no. 2 (2002): 147-147. doi:10.1136/gut.51.2.147.
- Giuliano, Giovanni. "Plant carotenoids: genomics meets multi-gene engineering." *Current Opinion in Plant Biology* 19 (2014): 111-117. doi:10.1016/j.pbi.2014.05.006.
- Giuliano, Giovanni, Raffaela Tavazza, Gianfranco Diretto, Peter Beyer, and Mark
 A. Taylor. "Metabolic engineering of carotenoid biosynthesis in plants."
 Trends in Biotechnology 26, no. 3 (2008): 139-145.
 doi:10.1016/j.tibtech.2007.12.003.

Goodwin, T.W., ed. *Plant pigments*. London: London Academic Press, 1998.

- Goo, Young-Min, Eun-Heui Han, Jae C. Jeong, Sang-Soo Kwak, Jaeju Yu, Yun-Hee Kim, Mi-Jeong Ahn, and Shin-Woo Lee. "Overexpression of the sweet potato IbOr gene results in the increased accumulation of carotenoid and confers tolerance to environmental stresses in transgenic potato." *Comptes Rendus Biologies* 338, no. 1 (2015): 12-20. doi:10.1016/j.crvi.2014.10.006.
- Grace, Mary H., GadG. Yousef, Sally J. Gustafson, Van-Den Truong, G. C. Yencho, and Mary A. Lila. "Phytochemical changes in phenolics, anthocyanins, ascorbic acid, and carotenoids associated with sweetpotato storage and impacts on bioactive properties." *Food Chemistry* 145 (2014): 717-724. doi:10.1016/j.foodchem.2013.08.107.
- Guerin, Martin, Mark E. Huntley, and Miguel Olaizola. "Haematococcus astaxanthin: applications for human health and nutrition." *Trends in Biotechnology* 21, no. 5 (2003): 210-216. doi:10.1016/s0167-7799(03)00078-7.

- Gupta, Suresh K., Deepa Trivedi, Sushma Srivastava, Sujata Joshi, Nabanita Halder, and Shambhu D. Verma. "Lycopene attenuates oxidative stress induced experimental cataract development: an in vitro and in vivo study." *Nutrition* 19, no. 9 (2003): 794-799. doi:10.1016/s0899-9007(03)00140-0.
- Gómez-García, María, and Neftalí Ochoa-Alejo. "Biochemistry and Molecular Biology of Carotenoid Biosynthesis in Chili Peppers (Capsicum spp.)." International Journal of Molecular Sciences 14, no. 9 (2013): 19025-19053. doi:10.3390/ijms140919025.
- Hagenimana, V., E. E. Carey, S.T. Gichuki, M.A. Oyunga, and J.K. Imungi.
 "Carotenoid contents in fresh, dried and processed sweetpotato products." *Ecology of Food and Nutrition* 37, no. 5 (1998): 455-473. doi:10.1080/03670244.1998.9991560.
- Hagiwara, Akihiro, Hiroko Yoshino, Toshio Ichihara, Mayumi Kawabe, Seiko Tamano, Hiromitsu Aoki, Takatoshi Koda, et al. "prevention by natural food anthocyanins, purple sweet potato color and red cabbage color, of 2-amino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazo[4,5-b]pyridine (PhIP)-associated colorectal carcinogenesis in rats." *The Journal of Toxicological Sciences* 27, no. 1 (2002): 57-68. doi:10.2131/jts.27.57.
- Hahn, F., A. P. Hulburt, and C. D. Poulter."*Escherichia coli* open reading frame
 696 is idi, a nonessential gene encoding isopentenyl diphosphate
 isomerase." *Journal of Bacteriology* 181, no. 3 (1999): 4499–4504.
- Hajdukiewicz, Peter, Zora Svab, and Pal Maliga. "The small, versatilepPZP family ofAgrobacterium binary vectors for plant transformation." *Plant Molecular Biology* 25, no. 6 (1994): 989-994. doi:10.1007/bf00014672.
- Harada, Hisashi, Takashi Maoka, Ayako Osawa, Jun-ichiro Hattan, Hirosuke
 Kanamoto, Kazutoshi Shindo, Toshihiko Otomatsu, and Norihiko Misawa.
 "Construction of transplastomic lettuce (Lactuca sativa) dominantly
 producing astaxanthin fatty acid esters and detailed chemical analysis of

generated carotenoids." *Transgenic Research* 23, no. 2 (2013): 303-315. doi:10.1007/s11248-013-9750-3.

- Harjes, C.E., T. R. Rocheford, L. Bai, T.P. Brutnell, C.B. Kandianis, S. G.
 Sowinski, A. E. Stapleton, et al. "Natural Genetic Variation in Lycopene Epsilon Cyclase Tapped for Maize Biofortification." *Science* 319, no. 5861 (2008): 330-333. doi:10.1126/science.1150255.
- Hasunuma, Tomohisa, Shin-Ichi Miyazawa, Satomi Yoshimura, Yuki Shinzaki, Ken-Ichi Tomizawa, Kazutoshi Shindo, Seon-Kang Choi, Norihiko Misawa, and Chikahiro Miyake. "Biosynthesis of astaxanthin in tobacco leaves by transplastomic engineering." *The Plant Journal* 55, no. 5 (2008): 857-868. doi:10.1111/j.1365-313x.2008.03559.x.
- Hennekens, Charles H., Julie E. Buring, JoAnn E. Manson, Meir Stampfer, Bernard Rosner, Nancy R. Cook, Charlene Belanger, et al. "Lack of Effect of Long-Term Supplementation with Beta Carotene on the Incidence of Malignant Neoplasms and Cardiovascular Disease." *New England Journal of Medicine* 334, no. 18 (1996): 1145-1149. doi:10.1056/nejm199605023341801.
- Hirakawa, H., Y. Okada, H. Tabuchi, K. Shirasawa, A. Watanabe, H. Tsuruoka,
 C. Minami, et al. "Survey of genome sequences in a wild sweet potato,
 Ipomoea trifida (H. B. K.) G. Don." *DNA Research* 22, no. 2 (2015):
 171-179. doi:10.1093/dnares/dsv002.
- Hirschberg, Joseph. "Carotenoid biosynthesis in flowering plants." *Current Opinion in Plant Biology* 4, no. 3 (2001): 210-218. doi:10.1016/s1369-5266(00)00163-1.
- Holden, Joanne M., Alison L. Eldridge, Gary R. Beecher, I. Marilyn Buzzard, Seema Bhagwat, Carol S. Davis, Larry W. Douglass, Susan Gebhardt, David Haytowitz, and Sally Schakel. "Carotenoid Content of U.S. Foods: An Update of the Database." *Journal of Food Composition and Analysis* 12, no. 3 (1999): 169-196. doi:10.1006/jfca.1999.0827.

- Howitt, Crispin A., and Barry J. Pogson. "Carotenoid accumulation and function in seeds and non-green tissues." *Plant, Cell and Environment* 29, no. 3 (2006): 435-445. doi:10.1111/j.1365-3040.2005.01492.x.
- Pfander, H. *Carotenoids Hand Book*. edited by G. Britton and Liaaen-Jensen S. Birkhäuser, Basel, Switzerland,2004.
- Huaccho, L., and R. J. Hijmas "A Geo-Referenced Database of Global Sweet Potato Distribution." *Production Systems and Natural Resource Management Department Working Paper No. 4, International Potato Center, 2000*, 2000.
- Huang, J. C., and M. Sun. "Genetic diversity and relationships of sweetpotato and its wild relatives in Ipomoea series Batatas (Convolvulaceae) as revealed by inter-simple sequence repeat (ISSR) and restriction analysis of chloroplast DNA." *TAG Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 100, no. 7 (2000): 1050-1060. doi:10.1007/s001220051386.
- Hue, S. M., Boyce A. N, and Somasundram C. "Comparative study on the antioxidant activity of leaf extract and carotenoids extract from Ipomoea batatas var. oren (sweetpotato)." *World Aca. Sci., Eng. Techn* 5 (2011): 10-26.
- Hue, S. M., Boyce A. N, and Somasundram C. "Antioxidant activity, phenolic and flavonoid contents in the leaves of different varieties of sweetpotato (Ipomoea batatas)." *Aust. J. Crop. Sci* 6 (2012): 375-380.
- Hugueney, Philippe, Susanne Romer, Marcel Kuntz, and Bilal Camara.
 "Characterization and molecular cloning of a flavoprotein catalyzing the synthesis of phytofluene and zeta-carotene in Capsicum chromoplasts." *European Journal of Biochemistry* 209, no. 1 (1992): 399-407. doi:10.1111/j.1432-1033.1992.tb17302.x.
- Hundle, B., M. Alberti, V. Nievelstein, P. Beyer, H. Kleinig, G. A. Armstrong, D. H.
 Burke, and J. E. Hearst. "Functional assignment of Erwinia herbicola
 Eho10 carotenoid genes expressed in *Escherichia coli*." *MGG Molecular & General Genetics* 245, no. 4 (1994): 406-416. doi:10.1007/bf00302252.

- Hundle, Bhupinder S., Peter Beyer, Hans Kleinig, Gerhard Englert, and John E. Hearst. "Carotenoids of *Erwinia herbicola* and an *Escherichia coli* HB101 Strain Carrying the *Erwinia herbicola* Carotenoid Gene Cluster." *Photochemistry and Photobiology* 54, no. 1 (1991): 89-93. doi:10.1111/j.1751-1097.1991.tb01989.x.
- Inoue, Hiroaki, Hiroshi Nojima, and Hiroto Okayama. "High efficiency transformation of *Escherichia coli* with plasmids." *Gene* 96, no. 1 (1990): 23-28. doi:10.1016/0378-1119(90)90336-p.
- Irwandi Jaswir. "Carotenoids: Sources, medicinal properties and their application in food and nutraceutical industry." *Journal of Medicinal Plants Research* 5, no. 33 (2011). doi:10.5897/jmprx11.011.
- Isaacson, T. "Cloning of tangerine from Tomato Reveals a Carotenoid Isomerase Essential for the Production of beta-Carotene and Xanthophylls in Plants." *THE PLANT CELL ONLINE* 14, no. 2 (2002): 333-342. doi:10.1105/tpc.010303.
- Isaacson, T., G. Ronen, D. Zamir, and J. Hirschberg. "Cloning of tangerine from Tomato Reveals a Carotenoid Isomerase Essential for the Production of beta-Carotene and Xanthophylls in Plants." *THE PLANT CELL ONLINE* 14, no. 2 (2002): 333-342. doi:10.1105/tpc.010303.
- Ishiguro, Koji, Masaru Yoshinaga, Yumi Kai, Takashi Maoka, and Makoto Yoshimoto. "Composition, content and antioxidative activity of the carotenoids in yellow-fleshed sweetpotato (Ipomoea batatas L.)." *Breeding Science* 60, no. 4 (2010): 324-329. doi:10.1270/jsbbs.60.324.
- Islam, S. "Some Bioactive Constituents, Antioxidant, and Antimutagenic Activities in the Leaves of Ipomoea batatas Lam. Genotypes." *Journal of Food Science and Technology* 4, no. 3 (2016): 70-80. Doi.10.12691/ajfst-4-3-3.
- Islam, S. "Sweetpotato (Ipomoea batatas L.) Leaf: Its Potential Effect on Human Health and Nutrition." *Journal of Food Science* 71, no. 2 (2006): R13-R121. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2621.2006.tb08912.x.
- Keeler, James. *NMR Spectroscopy*, 2nd edth ed. wiley, 2010. pp. 184–187. ISBN978-0-470-746080

- Jarret, R. L., and D. F. Austin. "Genetic diversity and systematic relationships in sweetpotato (Ipomoea batatas (L.) Lam.) and related species as revealed by RAPD analysis." *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 41, no. 3 (1994): 165-173. doi:10.1007/bf00051633.
- Jayaraj, Jayaraman, Robert Devlin, and Zamir Punja. "Metabolic engineering of novel ketocarotenoid production in carrot plants." *Transgenic Research* 17, no. 4 (2007): 489-501. doi:10.1007/s11248-007-9120-0.
- Jayne, T.S., Villareal, M, Pingali P, and Hemrich G. *Interactions between the agricultural sector and the HIV/AIDS pandemic: implications for agricultural policy*. Agricultural and Development Economics Division, The food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations:ESA Working Paper No. 04-46., 2004. http://led.co.za/system/files/documents/95.pdf.
- Jiang, X., H. Jianjun, and Y. Wang "Sweetpotato processing and product research and development at the Sichuan Academy of Agricultural Sciences." Sweetpotato post-Harvest Research and Development in China" (K.O. Fuglie and M. Hermann, eds)in Chengdu, Sichuan, PR China, November 7–8, 2001, International Potato Center (CIP) Bogor, Indonesia, Symposium presented at International Potato Center (CIP), Bogor, Indonesialn: Sweetpotato post-Harvest Research and Development in China" (K.O. Fuglie and M. Hermann, eds), Chengdu, Sichuan, PR China,, November 2004.
- Ji, Hua, Haixin Zhang, Hongtao Li, and Yunchao Li. "Analysis on the Nutrition Composition and Antioxidant Activity of Different Types of Sweet Potato Cultivars." *Food and Nutrition Sciences* 06, no. 01 (2015): 161-167. doi:10.4236/fns.2015.61017.
- Jyonouchi, Harumi, Sining Sun, Koji lijima, and D. Myron Gross. "Antitumor Activity of Astaxanthin and Its Mode of Action." *Nutrition and Cancer* 36, no. 1 (2000): 59-65. doi:10.1207/s15327914nc3601_9.
- Jorgensen, Kevin, and Leif H. Skibsted. "Carotenoid scavenging of radicals." Zeitschrift Zeitschrift für Lebensmittel-Untersuchung und -Forschung 196, no. 5 (1993): 423-429. doi:10.1007/bf01190806.

- Kachanovsky, D. E., S. Filler, T. Isaacson, and J. Hirschberg. "Epistasis in tomato color mutations involves regulation of phytoene synthase 1 expression by cis-carotenoids." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 109, no. 46 (2012): 19021-19026. doi:10.1073/pnas.1214808109.
- Kajiwara, Susumu, Paul D. Fraser, Keiji Kondo, and Norihiko Misawa.
 "Expression of an exogenous isopentenyl diphosphate isomerase gene enhances isoprenoid biosynthesis in *Escherichia coli*." *Biochemical Journal* 324, no. 2 (1997): 421-426. doi:10.1042/bj3240421.
- Kajiwara, Susumu, Toshihide Kakizono, Toshiko Saito, Keiji Kondo, Takeshi
 Ohtani, Naomichi Nishio, Shiro Nagai, and Norihiko Misawa. "Isolation and functional identification of a novel cDNA for astaxanthin biosynthesis from Haematococcus pluvialis, and astaxanthin synthesis in *Escherichia coli*." *Plant Molecular Biology* 29, no. 2 (1995): 343-352.
 doi:10.1007/bf00043657.
- Kamei, Hideo, Takasi Kojima, Makoto Hasegawa, Taturou Koide, Tessei Umeda, Takao Yukawa, and Keisuke Terabe. "Suppression of Tumor Cell Growth by Anthocyanins In Vitro." *Cancer Investigation* 13, no. 6 (1995): 590-594. doi:10.3109/07357909509024927.
- Kammona, S., R. Othman, I. Jaswir, and P. Jamal "Characterisation of carotenoid content in diverse local sweet potato (Ipomoea batatas) flesh tubers."
 International Journal of Pharmacy and Pharmaceutical Sciences 7, no. 2 (2014): 347-351.
- Kano, Mitsuyoshi, Tomomi Takayanagi, Katsuhisa Harada, Kumiko Makino, and Fumiyasu Ishikawa. "Antioxidative Activity of Anthocyanins from Purple Sweet Potato, *Ipomoera batatas* Cultivar Ayamurasaki." *Bioscience, Biotechnology, and Biochemistry* 69, no. 5 (2005): 979-988. doi:10.1271/bbb.69.979.
- Katayama, Kenji, Kozo Komae, Seiji Tamiya, Kaoru Khoyama, Makoto Nakatani, and Katsumi Komaki. "Studies on the Breeding for Improving Starch

Properties in Sweet Potato." *Japan Agricultural Research Quarterly: JARQ* 40, no. 2 (2006): 115-122. doi:10.6090/jarq.40.115.

- Khan, Muhammad Z., Miho Takemura, Takashi Maoka, Motoyasu Otani, and Norihiko Misawa. "Carotenoid analysis of sweetpotato Ipomoea batatas and functional identification of its lycopene β- and ε-cyclase genes." *Zeitschrift für Naturforschung C* 71, no. 9-10 (2016). doi:10.1515/znc-2016-0150.
- Kim, In-Jung, Kyong-Cheol Ko, Chan-Shick Kim, and Won-II Chung. "Isolation and characterization of cDNAs encoding β-carotene hydroxylase in Citrus." *Plant Science* 161, no. 5 (2001): 1005-1010. doi:10.1016/s0168-9452(01)00511-8.
- Kim, J., and D. DellaPenna. "Defining the primary route for lutein synthesis in plants: The role of Arabidopsis carotenoid beta-ring hydroxylase CYP97A3." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 103, no. 9 (2006): 3474-3479. doi:10.1073/pnas.0511207103.
- Kim, J., J. J. Smith, L. Tian, and D. DellaPenna. "The Evolution and Function of Carotenoid Hydroxylases in Arabidopsis." *Plant and Cell Physiology* 50, no. 3 (2009): 463-479. doi:10.1093/pcp/pcp005.
- Kim, Sun H., Young O. Ahn, Mi-Jeong Ahn, Haeng-Soon Lee, and Sang-Soo Kwak. "Down-regulation of β-carotene hydroxylase increases β-carotene and total carotenoids enhancing salt stress tolerance in transgenic cultured cells of sweetpotato." *Phytochemistry* 74 (2012): 69-78. doi:10.1016/j.phytochem.2011.11.003.
- Kim, Sun H., Jae C. Jeong, Seyeon Park, Ji-Yeong Bae, Mi-Jeong Ahn, Haeng-Soon Lee, and Sang-Soo Kwak. "Down-regulation of sweetpotato lycopene β-cyclase gene enhances tolerance to abiotic stress in transgenic calli." *Molecular Biology Reports* 41, no. 12 (2014): 8137-8148. doi:10.1007/s11033-014-3714-4.
- Kirti, Kushwaha, Saini Amita, Saraswat Priti, Agarwal Mukesh Kumar, and Saxena Jyoti. "Colorful World of Microbes: Carotenoids and Their

Applications." *Advances in Biology* 2014 (2014): 1-13. doi:10.1155/2014/837891.

- Komaki, K., and O. Yamakawa. "Research and Development Collaboration with Industry - The Japanese Sweetpotato Story." *Acta Horticulturae*, no. 703 (2006): 23-30. doi:10.17660/actahortic.2006.703.1.
- Komaki, Katsumi, and Kenji Katayama. "Root Thickness of Diploid *Ipomoea trifida* (H. B. K.) G. Don and Performance of Progeny Derived from the Cross ith Sweetpotato." *Breeding Science* 49, no. 2 (1999): 123-129. doi:10.1270/jsbbs.49.123.
- Komaki, Katsumi, Nath H. Regmi, Kenji Katayama, and Seiji Tamiya.
 "Morphological and RAPD Pattern Variations in Sweetpotato and its Closely Related Species." *Ikushugaku zasshi* 48, no. 3 (1998): 281-286. doi:10.1270/jsbbs1951.48.281.
- Komaki, K., Katayama K., and Tamiya S. "Advancement of sweet potato breeding for high starch content in Japan." *Tropic Agric* 75, no. 1/2 (1998): 220-223.
- Kuntz, M., S. Romer, C. Suire, P. Hugueney, J. H Weil, R. Schantz, and B. Camara. "Identification of a cDNA for the plastid-located geranylgeranyl pyrophosphate synthase from Capsicum annuum: correlative increase in enzyme activity and transcript level during fruit ripening." *The Plant Journal* 2, no. 1 (1992): 25-34. doi:10.1046/j.1365-313x.1992.t01-47-00999.x.
- Kurashige, M., Okimasu M, and Utsumi M. "Inhibition of oxidative injury of biological membranes by astaxanthin." *Physiol. Chem. Phys. Med. NMR* 22, no. 1 (1990): 27-38.
- Kurata, Rie, Masaru Adachi, Osamu Yamakawa, and Makoto Yoshimoto.
 "Growth Suppression of Human Cancer Cells by Polyphenolics from Sweetpotato (Ipomoea batatasL.) Leaves." *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 55, no. 1 (2007): 185-190. doi:10.1021/jf0620259.
- Kuroda, Masaharu, Mayumi Kimizu, and Chikako Mikami. "A Simple Set of Plasmids for the Production of Transgenic Plants." *Bioscience,*

Biotechnology, and Biochemistry 74, no. 11 (2010): 2348-2351. doi:10.1271/bbb.100465.

- Laurie, S.M., P.J. Van Jaarsveld, M. Faber, M.F. Philpott, and M.T. Labuschagne. "Trans-β-carotene, selected mineral content and potential nutritional contribution of 12 sweetpotato varieties." *Journal of Food Composition and Analysis* 27, no. 2 (2012): 151-159. doi:10.1016/j.jfca.2012.05.005.
- Lebot, V. "Section I. Cassava: developmental physiology." *Tropical root and tuber crops: cassava, sweet potato, yams and aroids* (n.d.): 39-48. doi:10.1079/9781845934248.0039.
- Lee, Pyung C., BenjaminN. Mijts, and Claudia Schmidt-Dannert. "Investigation of factors influencing production of the monocyclic carotenoid torulene in metabolically engineered *Escherichia coli*." *Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology* 65, no. 5 (2004). doi:10.1007/s00253-004-1619-1.
- Liao, Zhihua, Min Chen, Yijian Yang, Chunxian Yang, Yufan Fu, Qitang Zhang, and Qiang Wang. "A new isopentenyl diphosphate isomerase gene from sweet potato: cloning, characterization and color complementation." *Biologia* 63, no. 2 (2008). doi:10.2478/s11756-008-0038-7.
- Lichtenthaler, Hartmut K. "The 1-Deoxy-D-Xylulose-5-Phosphate Pathway of Isoprenoid Biosynthesis in Plants." *Annual Review of Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology* 50, no. 1 (1999): 47-65. doi:10.1146/annurev.arplant.50.1.47.
- Linden, Hartmut, Norihiko Misawa, Toshiko Saito, and Gerhard Sandmann. "A novel carotenoid biosynthesis gene coding for ζ-carotene desaturase: functional expression, sequence and phylogenetic origin." *Plant Molecular Biology* 24, no. 2 (1994): 369-379. doi:10.1007/bf00020174.
- Li, Qunrui, Gemma Farre, Shaista Naqvi, Jürgen Breitenbach, Georgina Sanahuja, Chao Bai, Gerhard Sandmann, Teresa Capell, Paul Christou, and Changfu Zhu. "Cloning and functional characterization of the maize carotenoid isomerase and β-carotene hydroxylase genes and their

regulation during endosperm maturation." *Transgenic Research* 19, no. 6 (2010): 1053-1068. doi:10.1007/s11248-010-9381-x.

- Li, Zhou-Hui, Paul D. Matthews, Benjamin Burr, and Eleanore T. Wurtzel. "Cloning and characterization of a maize cDNA encoding phytoene desaturase, an enzyme of the carotenoid biosynthetic pathway." *Plant Molecular Biology* 30, no. 2 (1996): 269-279. doi:10.1007/bf00020113.
- Luo, H. R., M. Santa-Maria, J. Benavides, D. P. Zhang, Y. Z. Zhang, and M.
 Gilshain "Rapid genetic transformation of sweetpotato (Ipomoea batatas (L.) Lam.) via organogenesis." *Afr J Biotechnology* 5, no. 20 (2006): 1851-1857. www.ajol.info/index.php/ajb/article/download/55888/44344.
- Lv, M.-Z., D.-Y. Chao, J.-X. Shan, M.-Z. Zhu, M. Shi, J.-P. Gao, and H.-X. Lin. "Rice Carotenoid -Ring Hydroxylase CYP97A4 is Involved in Lutein Biosynthesis." *Plant and Cell Physiology* 53, no. 6 (2012): 987-1002. doi:10.1093/pcp/pcs041.
- Maeo, Kenichiro, Tsutae Tomiya, Koji Hayashi, Mikiko Akaike, Atsushi Morikami, Sumie Ishiguro, and Kenzo Nakamura. "Sugar-responsible elements in the promoter of a gene for beta-amylase of sweet potato." *Plant Molecular Biology* 46, no. 5 (2001): 627-637. doi:10.1023/a:1010684908364.
- Ma, Gang, Lancui Zhang, Witchulada Yungyuen, Issei Tsukamoto, Natsumi Iijima, Michiru Oikawa, Kazuki Yamawaki, Masaki Yahata, and Masaya Kato. "Expression and functional analysis of citrus carotene hydroxylases: unravelling the xanthophyll biosynthesis in citrus fruits." *BMC Plant Biology* 16, no. 1 (2016). doi:10.1186/s12870-016-0840-2.
- Makino, T., H. Harada, H. Ikenaga, S. Matsuda, S. Takaichi, K. Shindo, G.
 Sandmann, T. Ogata, and N. Misawa. "Characterization of Cyanobacterial Carotenoid Ketolase CrtW and Hydroxylase CrtR by Complementation Analysis in *Escherichia coli*." *Plant and Cell Physiology* 49, no. 12 (2008): 1867-1878. doi:10.1093/pcp/pcn169.
- Maoka, Takashi, Naoshige Akimoto, Koji Ishiguro, Masaru Yoshinaga, and Makoto Yoshimoto. "Carotenoids with a 5,6-dihydro-5,6-dihydroxy-β-end group, from yellow sweet potato "Benimasari", Ipomoea batatas Lam."

Phytochemistry 68, no. 13 (2007): 1740-1745. doi:10.1016/j.phytochem.2007.03.019.

- Maoka, Takashi, Motoyasu Otani, Muhammad Z. Khan, Miho Takemura, Jun-ichiro Hattan, and Norihiko Misawa. "Novel carotenoids produced on the interaction of the foreign carotenoid ketolase CrtW and endogenous epoxycarotenoids unique to sweetpotato tubers." *Tetrahedron Letters* 57, no. 42 (2016): 4746-4748. doi:10.1016/j.tetlet.2016.09.037.
- Maoka, Takashi, Miho Takemura, Harukuni Tokuda, Nobutaka Suzuki, and Norihiko Misawa. "4-Ketozeinoxanthin, a novel carotenoid produced in *Escherichia coli* through metabolic engineering using carotenogenic genes of bacterium and liverwort." *Tetrahedron Letters* 55, no. 49 (2014): 6708-6710. doi:10.1016/j.tetlet.2014.10.033.
- Margalith, P. Z. "Production of ketocarotenoids by microalgae." *Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology* 51, no. 4 (1999): 431-438. doi:10.1007/s002530051413.
- Martin, Franklin W. "Incompatibility in the sweet potato. A review." *Economic Botany* 19, no. 4 (1965): 406-415. doi:10.1007/bf02904812.
- Martín, Juan F., Eduardo Gudiña, and José L. Barredo. "Conversion of β-carotene into astaxanthin: Two separate enzymes or a bifunctional hydroxylase-ketolase protein?" *Microbial Cell Factories* 7, no. 1 (2008): 3. doi:10.1186/1475-2859-7-3.
- Math, S. K., J. E. Hearst, and C. D. Poulter. "The *crtE* gene in *Erwinia herbicola* encodes geranylgeranyl diphosphate synthase." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 89, no. 15 (1992): 6761-6764. doi:10.1073/pnas.89.15.6761.
- Matsuno, T. "Xanthophylls as precursors of retinoids." *Pure and Applied Chemistry* 63, no. 1 (1991). doi:10.1351/pac199163010081.
- Matsuno, T. "Carotenoids." In: *Chemistry and Biology*, 59-74. New York: Plenum Publishing Corp, 1989. Krinsky N. I., Mathews-Roth M. M., Taylor F. eds.

- Mazza, G., Colin D. Kay, Tony Cottrell, and Bruce J. Holub. "Absorption of Anthocyanins from Blueberries and Serum Antioxidant Status in Human Subjects." *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 50, no. 26 (2002): 7731-7737. doi:10.1021/jf020690I.
- Mezzomo, Natália, and Sandra R. Ferreira. "Carotenoids Functionality, Sources, and Processing by Supercritical Technology: A Review." *Journal of Chemistry* 2016 (2016): 1-16. doi:10.1155/2016/3164312.
- Miki, W., N. Otaki, A. Yokoyama, H. Izumida, and N. Shimidzu. "Okadaxanthin, a novel C50-carotenoid from a bacterium, *Pseudomonas* sp. KK10206C associated with marine sponge, Halichondria okadai." *Experientia* 50, no. 7 (1994): 684-686. doi:10.1007/bf01952874.
- Misawa, N., M. Nakagawa, K. Kobayashi, S. Yamano, Y. Izawa, K. Nakamura, and K. Harashima. "Elucidation of the *Erwinia uredovora* carotenoid biosynthetic pathway by functional analysis of gene products expressed in *Escherichia coli*." *Journal of Bacteriology* 172, no. 12 (1990): 6704-6712. doi:10.1128/jb.172.12.6704-6712.1990.
- Misawa, Norihiko. "Carotenoids." *Comprehensive Natural Products II*, 2010, 733-753. doi:10.1016/b978-008045382-8.00009-5.
- Misawa, Norihiko. "Pathway engineering for functional isoprenoids." *Current Opinion in Biotechnology* 22, no. 5 (2011): 627-633. doi:10.1016/j.copbio.2011.01.002.
- Misawa, Norihiko, Mark R. Truesdale, Gerhard Sandmann, Paul D. Fraser, Colin Bird, Wolfgang Schuch, and Peter M. Bramley. "Expression of a Tomato cDNA Coding for Phytoene Synthase in *Escherichia coli*, Phytoene Formation In Vivo and In Vitro, and Functional Analysis of the Various Truncated Gene Products1." *The Journal of Biochemistry* 116, no. 5 (1994): 980-985. doi:10.1093/oxfordjournals.jbchem.a124656.
- Misawa, Norihiko, Shigeyuki Yamano, Hartmut Linden, Maria R. Felipe, Mercedes Lucas, Hiroshi Ikenaga, and Gerhard Sandmann. "Functional expression of the *Erwinia uredovora* carotenoid biosynthesis gene crtl in transgenic plants showing an increase of beta-carotene biosynthesis

activity and resistance to the bleaching herbicide norflurazon." *The Plant Journal* 4, no. 5 (1993): 833-840. doi:10.1046/j.1365-313x.1993.04050833.x.

- Misawa, N., Y. Satomi, K. Kondo, A. Yokoyama, S. Kajiwara, T. Saito, T. Ohtani, and W. Miki. "Structure and functional analysis of a marine bacterial carotenoid biosynthesis gene cluster and astaxanthin biosynthetic pathway proposed at the gene level." *Journal of Bacteriology* 177, no. 22 (1995): 6575-6584. doi:10.1128/jb.177.22.6575-6584.1995.
- Mohan, C., A. G.H. Nair, and S. K. Naskar. "Molecular mapping and genetic diversity studies in sweet potato." *Fruit, Vegetable, and Cereal Science and Biotechnology* 6, no. 1 (2012): 57-64.
- Mohan, and Aswathy G. H.Nair. "Characterization of genes and promoters transformation and transgenic development in sweetpotato." In *Fruits vegetable and cereal science and biotechnology*, 43-56. global science books, 2012.
- Moing, Annick, Asaph Aharoni, Benoit Biais, Ilana Rogachev, Sagit Meir, Leonid Brodsky, J. W. Allwood, et al. "Extensive metabolic cross-talk in melon fruit revealed by spatial and developmental combinatorial metabolomics." *New Phytologist* 190, no. 3 (2011): 683-696. doi:10.1111/j.1469-8137.2010.03626.x.
- Moise, Alexander R., Salim Al-Babili, and Eleanore T. Wurtzel. "Mechanistic Aspects of Carotenoid Biosynthesis." *Chemical Reviews* 114, no. 1 (2014): 164-193. doi:10.1021/cr400106y.
- Moran, N. A., and T. Jarvik. "Lateral Transfer of Genes from Fungi Underlies Carotenoid Production in Aphids." *Science* 328, no. 5978 (2010): 624-627. doi:10.1126/science.1187113.
- Morgulis, A., G. Coulouris, Y. Raytselis, T. L. Madden, R. Agarwala, and A. A. Schaffer. "Database indexing for production MegaBLAST searches." *Bioinformatics* 24, no. 16 (2008): 1757-1764. doi:10.1093/bioinformatics/btn322.

- Mullen, M. A., A. Jones, and R. T. Abrogast. "Resistance of sweet potato lines to infestations of sweet potato weevil, Cylas formicarius elegantulus (summers)." *Hort Science* 16 (1981): 539-540.
- Mwanga, Robert O., and Gorrettie Ssemakula. "Orange-fleshed sweetpotatoes for food, health and wealth in Uganda." *International Journal of Agricultural Sustainability* 9, no. 1 (2011): 42-49. doi:10.3763/ijas.2010.0546.
- Nakazawa, Y., T. Sashima, M. Hosokawa, and K. Miyashita. "Comparative evaluation of growth inhibitory effect of stereoisomers of fucoxanthin in human cancer cell lines." *Journal of Functional Foods* 1, no. 1 (2009): 88-97. doi:10.1016/j.jff.2008.09.015.
- Nedunchezhiyan, M., G. Byju, and R. C. Ray. "Effect of Tillage, Irrigation, and Nutrient Levels on Growth and Yield of Sweet Potato in Rice Fallow." *ISRN Agronomy* 2012 (2012): 1-13. doi:10.5402/2012/291285.
- Nedunchezhiyan, M., G. Byju, and S.K. Jata "Sweet Potato Agronomy." In: *Fruit,* Vegetable and Cereal Science and Biotechnology, Global Science Books, 11-13. Rome. O.L. Fesco, O.W. Boudion. 2002.
- Nedunchezhiyan, M., Byju G, and Jata S. K. "Sweet Potato Agronomy. In: Nedunchezhiyan M, Byju G (Eds) Sweet Potato." *Fruit, Vegetable and Cereal Science and Biotechnology* 6, no. 1 (2012): 1-10.
- Nisar, Nazia. "Carotenoid Metabolism in Plants." *Molecular Plant* 8, no. 1 (2015): 68-82. doi:10.1016/j.molp.2014.12.007.
- Nishida, Y., K. Adachi, H. Kasai, Y. Shizuri, K. Shindo, A. Sawabe, S.
 Komemushi, W. Miki, and N. Misawa. "Elucidation of a Carotenoid Biosynthesis Gene Cluster Encoding a Novel Enzyme, 2,2'- -Hydroxylase, from *Brevundimonas* sp. Strain SD212 and Combinatorial Biosynthesis of New or Rare Xanthophylls." *Applied and Environmental Microbiology* 71, no. 8 (2005): 4286-4296. doi:10.1128/aem.71.8.4286-4296.2005.

- Niyogi, Krishna K. "PHOTOPROTECTION REVISITED: Genetic and Molecular Approaches." *Annual Review of Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology* 50, no. 1 (1999): 333-359. doi:10.1146/annurev.arplant.50.1.333.
- Niyogi, Krishna K. "Safety valves for photosynthesis." *Current Opinion in Plant Biology* 3, no. 6 (2000): 455-460. doi:10.1016/s1369-5266(00)00113-8.
- Nwinyi, S.C.O. "Effect of age at shoot removal on tuber and shoot yields at harvest of five sweet potato (Ipomoea batatas (L.) Lam) cultivars." *Field Crops Research* 29, no. 1 (1992): 47-54. doi:10.1016/0378-4290(92)90075-k.
- O'Brien, Patricia J. "The Sweet Potato: Its Origin and Dispersal." *American Anthropologist* 74, no. 3 (1972): 342-365. doi:10.1525/aa.1972.74.3.02a00070.
- Ohnuma, S., M. Suzuki, and T. Nishino. "Archaebacterial ether-linked lipid biosynthetic gene. Expression cloning, sequencing, and characterization of geranylgeranyldiphosphate synthase." *J Biol Chem* 269, no. 20 (1994): 14792–14797.
- Okada, K., H. Kasahara, S. Yamaguchi, H. Kawaide, Y. Kamiya, H. Nojiri, and H. Yamane. "Genetic Evidence for the Role of Isopentenyl Diphosphate Isomerases in the Mevalonate Pathway and Plant Development in Arabidopsis." *Plant and Cell Physiology* 49, no. 4 (2008): 604-616. doi:10.1093/pcp/pcn032.
- Orjeda, G., R. Freyre, and M. Iwanaga. "Use of Ipomoea trifida germ plasm for sweet potato improvement. 3. Development of 4x interspecific hybrids between *Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam. (2n=6x=90) and *I. trifida* (H.B.K) G. Don. (2n=2x=30) as storage-root initiators for wild species." *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 83, no. 2 (1991). doi:10.1007/bf00226245.
- Oseph, H. "Interviews Henry Joseph:"La Patate Douce a Démontré Ses Vertus Santé." LaNutrition.fr - Guide Nutrition & Alimentation, Information Nutrition & Santé. Accessed December 16, 2016. http://www.lanutrition.fr/communaute/opinions/interviews/henry-joseph-lapatate-douce-a-demontre-ses-vertus-sante.html.

- Otani, M., Y. Wakita, and T. Shimada. "Genetic Transformation of Sweet Potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) By Agrobacterium Tumefaciens." Acta Horticulturae, no. 560 (2001): 193-196. doi:10.17660/actahortic.2001.560.35.
- Otani, Motoyasu, Masahiro Mii, Takashi Handa, Hiroshi Kamada, and Takiko Shimada. "Transformation of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) plants by *Agrobacterium rhizogenes*." *Plant Science* 94, no. 1-2 (1993): 151-159. doi:10.1016/0168-9452(93)90016-s.
- Otani, Motoyasu, and Takiko Shimada. "Efficient embryogenic callus formation in sweet potato (Ipomoea batatas (L.) Lam.)." *Ikushugaku zasshi* 46, no. 3 (1996): 257-260. doi:10.1270/jsbbs1951.46.257.
- Otani, Motoyasu, and Takiko Shimada. "Transgenic Sweet Potato with Agronomically Important Genes." *Transgenic Plants and Crops*, 2002. doi:10.1201/9780203910979.ch46.
- Otani, Motoyasu, Takiko Shimada, Hiroshi Kamada, Hiroyoshi Teruya, and Masahiro Mii. "Fertile transgenic plants of Ipomoea trichocarpa Ell. induced by different strains of Agrobacterium rhizogenes." *Plant Science* 116, no. 2 (1996): 169-175. doi:10.1016/0168-9452(96)04394-4.
- Otani, Motoyasu, Yoichi Wakita, and Takiko Shimada. "Production of Herbicide-Resistant Sweetpotato (Ipomoea batatas (L.) Lam.) Plants by Agrobacterium tumefaciens-mediated Transformation." *Breeding Science* 53, no. 2 (2003): 145-148. doi:10.1270/jsbbs.53.145.
- Ozias-Akins, P., and R. L. Jarret. "Nuclear DNA content and ploidy levels in the genus Ipomoea." *J Am Soc Hort Sci* 119 (1994): 110-115.
- Lee, P., and C. Schmidt-Dannert "Metabolic engineering towards biotechnological production of carotenoids in microorganisms." *Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology* 60, no. 1-2 (2002): 1-11. doi:10.1007/s00253-002-1101-x.

- Pace, R. D., T. E. Sibiya, B. R. Phills, and G. G. Dull. "Ca, Fe and Zn Content of Jewel'Sweet Potato Greens as Affected by Harvesting Practices." *Journal of Food Science* 50, no. 4 (1985): 940-941. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2621.1985.tb12984.x.
- Panda, V., and M. Sonkamble. "Anti-ulcer activity of Ipomoea batatas tubers (sweet potato)." *Functional Foods in Health and Disease* 2, no. 3 (2012): 48-61.
- Park, H. "Identification of the Carotenoid Isomerase Provides Insight into Carotenoid Biosynthesis, Prolamellar Body Formation, and Photomorphogenesis." *The Plant Cell Online* 14, no. 2 (2002): 321-332. doi:10.1105/tpc.010302.
- Park, Song-Yi, Abraham M. Nomura, Suzanne P. Murphy, Lynne R. Wilkens, Brian E. Henderson, and Laurence N. Kolonel. "Carotenoid Intake and Colorectal Cancer Risk: The Multiethnic Cohort Study." *Journal of Epidemiology* 19, no. 2 (2009): 63-71. doi:10.2188/jea.je20080078.
- Pecker, I., D. Chamovitz, H. Linden, G. Sandmann, and J. Hirschberg. "A single polypeptide catalyzing the conversion of phytoene to zeta-carotene is transcriptionally regulated during tomato fruit ripening." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 89, no. 11 (1992): 4962-4966. doi:10.1073/pnas.89.11.4962.
- Penfold, R. J., and J.M. Pemberton. "Sequencing, chromosomal inactivation, and functional expression in *Escherichia coli* of ppsR, a gene which represses carotenoid and bacteriochlorophyll synthesis in Rhodobacter sphaeroides." *Journal of Bacteriology* 176, no. 10 (1994): 2869-2876. doi:10.1128/jb.176.10.2869-2876.1994.
- Perry, K. L., T. A. Simonitch, K. J. Harrison-Lavoie, and S. T. Liu. "Cloning and regulation of Erwinia herbicola pigment genes." *Journal of Bacteriology* 168, no. 2 (1986), 607-612. doi:10.1128/jb.168.2.607-612.1986.
- Peto, R., R. Doll, J. D. Buckley, and M. B. Sporn. "Can dietary beta-carotene materially reduce human cancer rates?" *Nature* 290, no. 5803 (1981): 201-208. doi:10.1038/290201a0.

- Phillip, Denise, and Andrew J. Young. "Occurrence of the carotenoid lactucaxanthin in higher plant LHC II." *Photosynthesis Research* 43, no. 3 (1995): 273-282. doi:10.1007/bf00029940.
- Pisha, E., and J M.Pezzuto "Fruits and Vegetables Containing Compounds That Demonstrate Pharmacological Activity in Humans." *Economic and Medicinal Plant Research* 6 (1994): 189-233.
- Pool-Zobel, B. "Consumption of vegetables reduces genetic damage in humans: first results of a human intervention trial with carotenoid-rich foods." *Carcinogenesis* 18, no. 9 (1997): 1847-1850. doi:10.1093/carcin/18.9.1847.
- Purcell, Albert E., and William M. Walter. "Carotenoids of centennial variety sweet potato, Ipomea batatas." *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 16, no. 5 (1968): 769-770. doi:10.1021/jf60159a026.
- Quinlan, R. F., M. Shumskaya, L. M. Bradbury, J. Beltran, C. Ma, E. J. Kennelly, and E. T. Wurtzel. "Synergistic Interactions between Carotene Ring Hydroxylases Drive Lutein-Formation in Plant Carotenoid Biosynthesis." *Plant Physiology* 160, no. 1 (2012): 204-214. doi:10.1104/pp.112.198556.
- Quinlan, Rena F., Tahhan T. Jaradat, and Eleanore T. Wurtzel. "Escherichia coli as a platform for functional expression of plant P450 carotene hydroxylases." Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics 458, no. 2 (2007): 146-157. doi:10.1016/j.abb.2006.11.019.
- Rao, L. G., E. V. Guns, and A. V. Rao. "Lycopene: Its role in human health and disease." *Agro Food* 7 (2003): 25-30.
- Renstrøm, Britta, Gunner Borch, Olav M. Skulberg, and Synnøve Liaaen-Jensen.
 "Optical purity of (3S,3'S)-astaxanthin from Haematococcus pluvialis." *Phytochemistry* 20, no. 11 (1981): 2561-2564.
 doi:10.1016/0031-9422(81)83094-4.
- Rodriguez-Bonilla, Lorraine, Hugo E. Cuevas, Milly Montero-Rojas, Fernando Bird-Pico, Dianiris Luciano-Rosario, and Dimuth Siritunga. "Assessment of Genetic Diversity of Sweet Potato in Puerto Rico." *PLoS ONE* 9, no. 12

(2014): e116184. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0116184.

- Rodriguez-Concepcion, M. "Elucidation of the Methylerythritol Phosphate Pathway for Isoprenoid Biosynthesis in Bacteria and Plastids. A Metabolic Milestone Achieved through Genomics." *Plant Physiology* 130, no. 3 (2002): 1079-1089. doi:10.1104/pp.007138.
- Rodríguez-Bernaldo de Quirós, Ana, and Helena S. Costa. "Analysis of carotenoids in vegetable and plasma samples: A review." *Journal of Food Composition and Analysis* 19, no. 2-3 (2006): 97-111. doi:10.1016/j.jfca.2005.04.004.
- Rodríguez-Concepción, Manuel. "Early Steps in Isoprenoid Biosynthesis: Multilevel Regulation of the Supply of Common Precursors in Plant Cells." *Phytochemistry Reviews* 5, no. 1 (2006): 1-15. doi:10.1007/s11101-005-3130-4.
- Ronen, Gil, Merav Cohen, Dani Zamir, and Joseph Hirschberg. "Regulation of carotenoid biosynthesis during tomato fruit development: expression of the gene for lycopene epsilon-cyclase is down-regulated during ripening and is elevated in the mutantDelta." *The Plant Journal* 17, no. 4 (1999): 341-351. doi:10.1046/j.1365-313x.1999.00381.x.
- Rossel, G., A. Kriegner, and D. P. Zhang. *From Latin America to Oceania: The historic dispersal of sweet potato re-examined using AFLP In: CIP Program Report 1999–2000, p. 315-321.* CIP, Lima, Peru, 2001.
- Roullier, Caroline, Anne Duputié, Paul Wennekes, Laure Benoit, Víctor M. Fernández Bringas, Genoveva Rossel, David Tay, Doyle McKey, and Vincent Lebot. "Disentangling the Origins of Cultivated Sweet Potato (Ipomoea batatas (L.) Lam.)." *PLoS ONE* 8, no. 5 (2013): e62707. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0062707.
- Roullier, C., R. Kambouo, J. Paofa, D. McKey, and V. Lebot. "On the origin of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.), genetic diversity in New Guinea, a secondary centre of diversity." *Heredity* 110, no. 6 (2013): 594-604. doi:10.1038/hdy.2013.14.

- Ruiz-Sola, M. Á., and Manuel Rodríguez-Concepción. "Carotenoid Biosynthesis in Arabidopsis: A Colorful Pathway." *The Arabidopsis Book* 10 (2012): e0158. doi:10.1199/tab.0158.
- Sandmann, G. "A New Type of Asymmetrically Acting beta -Carotene Ketolase Is Required for the Synthesis of Echinenone in the Cyanobacterium synechocystis sp. PCC 6803." Journal of Biological Chemistry 272, no. 15 (1997): 9728-9733. doi:10.1074/jbc.272.15.9728.
- Sandmann, G. "New functional assignment of the carotenogenic genes *crtB* and *crtE* with constructs of these genes from *Erwinia* species." *FEMS Microbiology Letters* 90, no. 3 (1992): 253-257. doi:10.1016/0378-1097(92)90656-9.
- Sandmann, Gerhard. "Carotenoid biosynthesis in microorganisms and plants." *European Journal of Biochemistry* 223, no. 1 (1994): 7-24. doi:10.1111/j.1432-1033.1994.tb18961.x.
- Sandmann, Gerhard. "[30] Carotenoid analysis in mutants from *Escherichia coli* transformed with carotenogenic gene cluster and Scenedesmus obliquus mutant C-6D." *Methods in Enzymology*, 1993, 341-347. doi:10.1016/0076-6879(93)14077-v.
- Sandmann, Gerhard, Wendy S. Woods, and Robert W. Tuveson. "Identification of carotenoids in Erwinia herbicola and in a transformed *Escherichia coli* strain." *FEMS Microbiology Letters* 71, no. 1-2 (1990): 77-82. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6968.1990.tb03801.x.
- Schaub, Patrick, Qiuju Yu, Sandra Gemmecker, Pierre Poussin-Courmontagne, Justine Mailliot, Alastair G. McEwen, Sandro Ghisla, Salim Al-Babili, Jean Cavarelli, and Peter Beyer. "On the Structure and Function of the Phytoene Desaturase CRTI from Pantoea ananatis, a Membrane-Peripheral and FAD-Dependent Oxidase/Isomerase." *PLoS ONE* 7, no. 6 (2012): e39550. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0039550.
- Schiedt, K., and Liaaen-Jensen S. Isolation and Analysis. In Carotenoids p., 80-108. Edited by G. Britton, Liaaen-Jensen S, and Pfander H. Birkhäuser: Basel, Switzerland1995.

- Schnurr, Georg, Norihiko Misawa, and Sandmann. "Expression, purification and properties of lycopene cyclase from Erwinia uredovora." *Biochemical Journal* 315, no. 3 (1996): 869-874. doi:10.1042/bj3150869.
- Scott, Gregory J., Mark W. Rosegrant, and Claudia Ringler. "Global projections for root and tuber crops to the year 2020." *Food Policy* 25, no. 5 (2000): 561-597. doi:10.1016/s0306-9192(99)00087-1.
- Scott, G. S., M. W.Rosegrant, and C. Ringler. Food, Agriculture, and Environment Discussion Paper In: Roots and tubers for the 21st century; trends, projections, and policy for developing countries. International Food Policy Research Institute.Washington, D.C., U.S.A, 2000.
- Senanayake, S., KKDS Ranaweera, Arthur Bamunuarachchi, and Anil Gunaratne. "Comparative analysis of trypsin inhibitor levels in sweet potato cultivars in Sri Lanka." *Journal of the National Science Foundation* of Sri Lanka 42, no. 1 (2014). doi:10.4038/jnsfsr.v42i1.6681.
- Seo, M. "Complex regulation of ABA biosynthesis in plants." *Trends in Plant Science* 7, no. 1 (2002): 41-48. doi:10.1016/s1360-1385(01)02187-2.
- Shahidul, I. M., Intisar Islam, and A.U. Shaikh. "Antioxidative and Antimutagenic Potentials of Phytochemicals from Ipomoea batatas (L.) Lam." *International Journal of Cancer Research* 5, no. 3 (2009): 83-94. doi:10.3923/ijcr.2009.83.94.
- Shih, Ping-Hsiao, Chi-Tai Yeh, and Gow-Chin Yen. "Anthocyanins Induce the Activation of Phase II Enzymes through the Antioxidant Response Element Pathway against Oxidative Stress-Induced Apoptosis." *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 55, no. 23 (2007): 9427-9435. doi:10.1021/jf071933i.
- Shindo, Kazutoshi, Tomohisa Hasunuma, Emiko Asagi, Aya Sano, Eri Hotta, Noriko Minemura, Chikahiro Miyake, Takashi Maoka, and Norihiko Misawa. "4-Ketoantheraxanthin, a novel carotenoid produced by the combination of the bacterial enzyme β-carotene ketolase CrtW and endogenous carotenoid biosynthetic enzymes in higher plants."

Tetrahedron Letters 49, no. 20 (2008): 3294-3296. doi:10.1016/j.tetlet.2008.03.077.

- Shiotani, Itaru, and Tsuneo Kawase. "Genomic structure of the sweet potato and hexaploids in *Ipomoea trifida* (H.B.K.) Don." *Ikushugaku zasshi* 39, no. 1 (1989): 57-66. doi:10.1270/jsbbs1951.39.57.
- Shumskaya, M., L. M. Bradbury, R. R. Monaco, and E. T. Wurtzel. "Plastid Localization of the Key Carotenoid Enzyme Phytoene Synthase Is Altered by Isozyme, Allelic Variation, and Activity." *The Plant Cell* 24, no. 9 (2012): 3725-3741. doi:10.1105/tpc.112.104174.
- Simmonds, N. W. "Sweet Potato: An Untapped Food Resource. By J. A. Woolfe. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press (1992), pp. 643, hardback £65.00, US\$130.00. ISBN 0-521-40295-6." *Experimental Agriculture* 29, no. 01 (1993): 132. doi:10.1017/s0014479700020512.
- Liaaen-Jensen, S., and Pfander H. *Carotenoid Vol. 3. Biosynthesis and Metabolism*. Edited by G. Britton. Birkhäuser, Basel 1998.
- Song, Guo-Qing, Hideo Honda, and Ken-Ichi Yamaguchi. "Efficient *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*-mediated transformation of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.), from stem explants using a two-step kanamycin-hygromycin selection method." *In Vitro Cellular* & *Developmental Biology - Plant* 40, no. 4 (2004): 359-365. doi:10.1079/ivp2004539.
- Sosinski, B., L. He, J. Cervantes-Flores, R.M. Pokrzywa, A. Bruckner, and G.C. Yencho. "Sweetpotato Genomics AT North Carolina State University." *Acta Horticulturae*, no. 583 (2002): 51-60. doi:10.17660/actahortic.2002.583.4.
- Srisuwan, Saranya, Darasinh Sihachakr, and Sonja Siljak-Yakovlev. "The origin and evolution of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* Lam.) and its wild relatives through the cytogenetic approaches." *Plant Science* 171, no. 3 (2006): 424-433. doi:10.1016/j.plantsci.2006.05.007.

- Stahl, W., and H. Sies. "Carotene and other carotenoids in protection from sunlight." *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 96, no. 5 (2012): 1179S-1184S. doi:10.3945/ajcn.112.034819.
- Stahl, W., Ulrike Heinrich, H. Jungmann, and H.Tronnier. "Increased dermal carotenoid levels assessed by noninvasive reflection spectrophotometry correlate with serum levels in women ingesting betatene." *Journal of Nutrition 128(5):903-7 · June 1998* 128, no. 5 (1998): 903-907.
- Stigliani, A. L., G. Giorio, and C. D'Ambrosio. "Characterization of P450 Carotenoid - and -Hydroxylases of Tomato and Transcriptional Regulation of Xanthophyll Biosynthesis in Root, Leaf, Petal and Fruit." *Plant and Cell Physiology* 52, no. 5 (2011): 851-865. doi:10.1093/pcp/pcr037.
- Sugawara, Tatsuya, Kyoko Yamashita, Akira Asai, Akihiko Nagao, Tomotaka Shiraishi, Ichiro Imai, and Takashi Hirata. "Esterification of xanthophylls by human intestinal Caco-2 cells." *Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics* 483, no. 2 (2009): 205-212. doi:10.1016/j.abb.2008.10.007.
- Sun, Z., E. Gantt, and F. X. Cunningham. "Cloning and Functional Analysis of the -Carotene Hydroxylase of Arabidopsis thaliana." *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271, no. 40 (1996): 24349-24352. doi:10.1074/jbc.271.40.24349.
- "Sweet potato: an untapped food resource." *Choice Reviews Online* 30, no. 04 (1992): 30-2081-30-2081. doi:10.5860/choice.30-2081.
- Takahata, Yasuhiro, Masaru Tanaka, Motoyasu Otani, Kenji Katayama,
 Kanefumi Kitahara, Osamu Nakayachi, Hiroki Nakayama, and Masaru
 Yoshinaga. "Inhibition of the expression of the starch synthase II gene
 leads to lower pasting temperature in sweetpotato starch." *Plant Cell Reports* 29, no. 6 (2010): 535-543. doi:10.1007/s00299-010-0842-8.
- Takemura, M., T. Maoka, and N. Misawa. "Carotenoid Analysis of a Liverwort Marchantia polymorpha and Functional Identification of its Lycopene β and ε-cyclase Genes." Plant and Cell Physiology 55, no. 1 (2013): 194-200. doi:10.1093/pcp/pct170.

- Takemura, Miho, Takashi Maoka, and Norihiko Misawa. "Biosynthetic routes of hydroxylated carotenoids (xanthophylls) in *Marchantia polymorpha*, and production of novel and rare xanthophylls through pathway engineering in *Escherichia coli*." *Planta* 241, no. 3 (2014): 699-710. doi:10.1007/s00425-014-2213-0.
- Tamura, K., G. Stecher, D. Peterson, A. Filipski, and S. Kumar. "MEGA6: Molecular Evolutionary Genetics Analysis Version 6.0." *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 30, no. 12 (2013): 2725-2729. doi:10.1093/molbev/mst197.
- Tanaka, Takuji, Yukio Morishita, Masumi Suzui, Toshihiro Kojima, Ataru Okumura, and Hideki Mori. "Chemoprevention of mouse urinary bladder carcinogenesis by the naturally occurring carotenoid astaxanthin." *Carcinogenesis* 15, no. 1 (1994): 15-19. doi:10.1093/carcin/15.1.15.
- Tanaka, Yoshikazu, Nobuhiro Sasaki, and Akemi Ohmiya. "Biosynthesis of plant pigments: anthocyanins, betalains and carotenoids." *The Plant Journal* 54, no. 4 (2008): 733-749. doi:10.1111/j.1365-313x.2008.03447.x.
- Teow, Choong C., Van-Den Truong, Roger F. McFeeters, Roger L. Thompson, Kenneth V. Pecota, and G. C. Yencho. "Antioxidant activities, phenolic and β-carotene contents of sweet potato genotypes with varying flesh colours." *Food Chemistry (Available Online)* 103, no. 3 (2006): 829-838. doi:10.1016/j.foodchem.2006.09.033.
- Teow, Choong C., Van-Den Truong, Roger F. McFeeters, Roger L. Thompson, Kenneth V. Pecota, and G. C. Yencho. "Antioxidant activities, phenolic and β-carotene contents of sweet potato genotypes with varying flesh colours." *Food Chemistry* 103, no. 3 (2007): 829-838. doi:10.1016/j.foodchem.2006.09.033.
- Thane, C., and Reddy. "Processing of fruit and vegetables: effect on carotenoids." In *In. Nutrition and Food Science*, 58-65. MCB Univ. Press, 1997. ISSN 0034-6659.
- Tian, L., and D. DellaPenna "Characterization of a second carotenoid β-hydroxylase gene from Arabidopsis and its relationship to the LUT1 locus." *Plant Molecular Biology* 47 (2001): 379-388.

- Tian, Li, and Dean DellaPenna. "Progress in understanding the origin and functions of carotenoid hydroxylases in plants." *Archives of Biochemistry* and Biophysics 430, no. 1 (2004): 22-29. doi:10.1016/j.abb.2004.02.003.
- Tonhosolo, R., F. L. D'Alexandri, V. V. De Rosso, M. L. Gazarini, M.Y. Matsumura, V. J. Peres, E. F. Merino, et al. "Carotenoid Biosynthesis in Intraerythrocytic Stages of Plasmodium falciparum." *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 284, no. 15 (2009): 9974-9985. doi:10.1074/jbc.m807464200.
- Tsoyi, Konstantin, Hyeong B. Park, YoungM. Kim, Jong I. Chung, Sung C. Shin, Won S. Lee, HanG. Seo, Jae H. Lee, Ki C. Chang, and Hye J. Kim.
 "Anthocyanins from Black Soybean Seed Coats Inhibit UVB-Induced Inflammatory Cylooxygenase-2 Gene Expression and PGE2Production through Regulation of the Nuclear Factor-κB and Phosphatidylinositol 3-Kinase/Akt Pathway." *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 56, no. 19 (2008): 8969-8974. doi:10.1021/jf801345c.
- Tsuda, Takanori, Fumihiko Horio, and Toshihiko Osawa. "Dietary cyanidin 3-O-β-d-glucoside increases ex vivo oxidation resistance of serum in rats." *Lipids* 33, no. 6 (1998): 583-588. doi:10.1007/s11745-998-0243-5.
- Turujman, S A, Wamer W G, Wei R R, and Albert H H. "Rapid liquid chromatographic method to distinguish wild salmon from aquacultured salmon fed synthetic astaxanthin." *J. AOAC Int* 80 (1997): 622-632.
- Umeno, D., and F. H. Arnold. "Evolution of a Pathway to Novel Long-Chain Carotenoids." *Journal of Bacteriology* 186, no. 5 (2004): 1531-1536. doi:10.1128/jb.186.5.1531-1536.2004.
- Umeno, D., A. V. Tobias, and F. H. Arnold. "Evolution of the C30 Carotenoid Synthase CrtM for Function in a C40 Pathway." *Journal of Bacteriology* 184, no. 23 (2002): 6690-6699. doi:10.1128/jb.184.23.6690-6699.2002.
- USDA. (U.S. Department of Agriculture), National Nutrient Database for Standard Reference, Release 28. Basic Report 11507. Raw sweetpotato, unprepared. USA: Online, 2016. Accessed December 16, 2016. <u>https://ndb.nal.usda.gov/ndb/foods/show/</u>

- Vallabhaneni, R., C.E. Gallagher, N. Licciardello, A. J. Cuttriss, R. F. Quinlan, and E. T. Wurtzel. "Metabolite Sorting of a Germplasm Collection Reveals the Hydroxylase3 Locus as a New Target for Maize Provitamin A Biofortification." *PLANT PHYSIOLOGY* 151, no. 3 (2009): 1635-1645. doi:10.1104/pp.109.145177.
- Vallabhaneni, R., and E. T. Wurtzel. "Timing and Biosynthetic Potential for Carotenoid Accumulation in Genetically Diverse Germplasm of Maize." *PLANT PHYSIOLOGY* 150, no. 2 (2009): 562-572. doi:10.1104/pp.109.137042.
- Villareal, R.L., S. C. Tsou, H. F. Lo, and S. C. Chiu. ""Sweetpotato Tips asVegetables"." In *In Proceedings of the First International Symposium, AVRDC, Shanhua*, edited by Villareal R. L and Griggs T. D, 313-320. Shanhua, Taiwan1982.
- Walter, Michael H., and Dieter Strack. "Carotenoids and their cleavage products: Biosynthesis and functions." *Natural Product Reports* 28, no. 4 (2011): 663. doi:10.1039/c0np00036a.
- Walter, Michael H., and Dieter Strack. "ChemInform Abstract: Carotenoids and Their Cleavage Products: Biosynthesis and Functions." *ChemInform* 42, no. 28 (2011): no-no. doi:10.1002/chin.201128265.
- Wanda, C. W. "Genetic improvement for meeting human nutrition needs." Proceedings of the first International symposium on horticulture and human nutrition, Contributor of fruits and vegetables, Symposium presented at Quebedeaux, B. and Bliss F., (editors), Prentice Hall., 1987.
- Wang, Hong, Guohua Cao, and Ronald L. Prior. "Oxygen Radical Absorbing Capacity of Anthocyanins." *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 45, no. 2 (1997): 304-309. doi:10.1021/jf960421t.
- Wang, J., and G. Mazza. "Inhibitory Effects of Anthocyanins and Other Phenolic Compounds on Nitric Oxide Production in LPS/IFN-γ-Activated RAW 264.7 Macrophages." *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 50, no. 4 (2002): 850-857. doi:10.1021/jf010976a.

- Welsch, R., F. Wust, C. Bar, S. Al-Babili, and P. Beyer. "A Third Phytoene Synthase Is Devoted to Abiotic Stress-Induced Abscisic Acid Formation in Rice and Defines Functional Diversification of Phytoene Synthase Genes." *PLANT PHYSIOLOGY* 147, no. 1 (2008): 367-380. doi:10.1104/pp.108.117028.
- Welsch, Ralf, Jacobo Arango, Cornelia Bär, Bertha Salazar, Salim Al-Babili, Jesús Beltrán, Paul Chavarriaga, Hernan Ceballos, Joe Tohme, and Peter Beyer. "Provitamin A Accumulation in Cassava (Manihot esculenta) Roots Driven by a Single Nucleotide Polymorphism in a Phytoene Synthase Gene." *The Plant Cell* 22, no. 10 (2010): 3348-3356. doi:10.1105/tpc.110.077560.
- Woodall, Alan A., Simon W. Lee, Roland J. Weesie, Malcolm J. Jackson, and George Britton. "Oxidation of carotenoids by free radicals: relationship between structure and reactivity." *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) -General Subjects* 1336, no. 1 (1997): 33-42. doi:10.1016/s0304-4165(97)00006-8.
- Woolfe, J. A. Sweet potato: an untapped food resource. Cambridge University Press, 1992.
- Wurtzel, E.T., G. Valdez, and P. D. Matthews. "Variation in expression of carotenoid genes in transformed *E. coli* strains." *Biores J* 1 (1997): 1-11.
- Yamakawa, Yoshinaga M, Hidaka T, Kumagai T, and Komaki K. "'Ayamurasaki': a new sweetpotato cultivar (in Japanese). Bull Kyushu." *Natl Agric Exp Stn* 31 (1997): 1-22.
- Yamamizo, C., S. Kishimoto, and A. Ohmiya. "Carotenoid composition and carotenogenic gene expression during Ipomoea petal development." *Journal of Experimental Botany* 61, no. 3 (2009): 709-719. doi:10.1093/jxb/erp335.
- Yang, Li-En, Xing-Qi Huang, Yu Hang, Yin-Yin Deng, Qin-Qin Lu, and Shan Lu.
 "The P450-type carotene hydroxylase PuCHY1 from Porphyra suggests the evolution of carotenoid metabolism in red algae." *Journal of Integrative Plant Biology* 56, no. 9 (2014): 902-915. doi:10.1111/jipb.12229.

- Yan, Lang, Ying-Hong Gu, Xiang Tao, Xian-Jun Lai, Yi-Zheng Zhang, Xue-Mei Tan, and Haiyan Wang. "Scanning of Transposable Elements and Analyzing Expression of Transposase Genes of Sweet Potato [Ipomoea batatas]." *PLoS ONE* 9, no. 3 (2014): e90895. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0090895.
- Yokoyama, A. "Composition and presumed biosynthetic pathway of carotenoids in the astaxanthin-producing bacterium Agrobacterium aurantiacum." *FEMS Microbiology Letters* 128, no. 2 (1995): 139-144. doi:10.1016/0378-1097(95)00097-o.
- Yokoyama, Akihiro, and Wataru Miki. "Composition and presumed biosynthetic pathway of carotenoids in the astaxanthin-producing bacterium Agrobacterium aurantiacum." *FEMS Microbiology Letters* 128, no. 2 (1995): 139-144. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6968.1995.tb07513.x.
- Yokoyama, Akihiro, Yoshikazu Shizuri, and Norihiko Misawa. "Production of new carotenoids, astaxanthin glucosides, by *Escherichia coli* transformants carrying carotenoid biosynthesis genes." *Tetrahedron Letters* 39, no. 22 (1998): 3709-3712. doi:10.1016/s0040-4039(98)00542-5.
- Yoshimoto, M. "New trends in processing and use of sweetpotato in Japan." *Farming Japan* 35 (2001): 22-28.
- Yoshinaga, Masaru, Osamu Yamakawa, and Makoto Nakatani. "Genotypic Diversity of Anthocyanin Content and Composition in Purple-Fleshed Sweet potato (Ipomoea batatas (L.) Lam)." *Breeding Science* 49, no. 1 (1999): 43-47. doi:10.1270/jsbbs.49.43.
- Yuan, Hui, Junxiang Zhang, Divyashree Nageswaran, and Li Li. "Carotenoid metabolism and regulation in horticultural crops." *Horticulture Research* 2 (2015): 15036. doi:10.1038/hortres.2015.36.
- YU, Ling, Hong Zhai, Wei Chen, Shao-zhen He, and Qing-chang Liu. "Cloning and Functional Analysis of Lycopene ε-Cyclase (IbLCYe) Gene from Sweetpotato, Ipomoea batatas (L.)Lam." *Journal of Integrative Agriculture* 12, no. 5 (2013): 773-780. doi:10.1016/s2095-3119(13)60299-3.

- Zhang, Dapeng, Genoveva Rossel, Albert Kriegner, and Robert Hijmans. "AFLP assessment of diversity in sweetpotato from Latin America and the Pacific region: Its implications on the dispersal of the crop." *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 51, no. 2 (2004): 115-120. doi:10.1023/b:gres.0000020853.04508.a0.
- Zhang, Zheng, Scott Schwartz, Lukas Wagner, and Webb Miller. "A Greedy Algorithm for Aligning DNA Sequences." *Journal of Computational Biology* 7, no. 1-2 (2000): 203-214. doi:10.1089/10665270050081478.
- Zhu, Changfu, Shaista Naqvi, Teresa Capell, and Paul Christou. "Metabolic engineering of ketocarotenoid biosynthesis in higher plants." Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics 483, no. 2 (2009): 182-190. doi:10.1016/j.abb.2008.10.029.